Operation and Maintenance Manual

279C, 289C and 299C Compact Track Loaders

MBT1-Up (279C)
JMP1-Up (289C)
JSP1-Up (299C)
Important Safety Information

Most accidents that involve product operation, maintenance and repair are caused by failure to observe basic safety rules or precautions. An accident can often be avoided by recognizing potentially hazardous situations before an accident occurs. A person must be alert to potential hazards. This person should also have the necessary training, skills and tools to perform these functions properly.

Improper operation, lubrication, maintenance or repair of this product can be dangerous and could result in injury or death.

Do not operate or perform any lubrication, maintenance or repair on this product, until you have read and understood the operation, lubrication, maintenance and repair information.

Safety precautions and warnings are provided in this manual and on the product. If these hazard warnings are not heeded, bodily injury or death could occur to you or to other persons.

The hazards are identified by the “Safety Alert Symbol” and followed by a “Signal Word” such as “DANGER”, “WARNING” or “CAUTION”. The Safety Alert “WARNING” label is shown below.

The meaning of this safety alert symbol is as follows:

Attention! Become Alert! Your Safety is Involved.

The message that appears under the warning explains the hazard and can be either written or pictorially presented.

A non-exhaustive list of operations that may cause product damage are identified by “NOTICE” labels on the product and in this publication.

Caterpillar cannot anticipate every possible circumstance that might involve a potential hazard. The warnings in this publication and on the product are, therefore, not all inclusive. You must not use this product in any manner different from that considered by this manual without first satisfying yourself that you have considered all safety rules and precautions applicable to the operation of the product in the location of use, including site-specific rules and precautions applicable to the worksite. If a tool, procedure, work method or operating technique that is not specifically recommended by Caterpillar is used, you must satisfy yourself that it is safe for you and for others. You should also ensure that the product will not be damaged or become unsafe by the operation, lubrication, maintenance or repair procedures that you intend to use.

The information, specifications, and illustrations in this publication are on the basis of information that was available at the time that the publication was written. The specifications, torques, pressures, measurements, adjustments, illustrations, and other items can change at any time. These changes can affect the service that is given to the product. Obtain the complete and most current information before you start any job. Cat dealers have the most current information available.

When replacement parts are required for this product Caterpillar recommends using Cat replacement parts or parts with equivalent specifications including, but not limited to, physical dimensions, type, strength and material.

Failure to heed this warning can lead to premature failures, product damage, personal injury or death.

In the United States, the maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any repair establishment or individual of the owner's choosing.
# Table of Contents

## Foreword

4

## Safety Section

### Safety Messages

6

### Safety Messages (Work Tools)

15

### Additional Messages

23

### General Hazard Information

23

### Crushing Prevention and Cutting Prevention

26

### Burn Prevention

26

### Fire Prevention and Explosion Prevention

27

### Fire Safety

30

### Fire Extinguisher Location

31

### Electrical Storm Injury Prevention

31

### Before Starting Engine

31

### Visibility Information

31

### Engine Starting

32

### Before Operation

32

### Operation

32

### Work Tools

33

### Parking

33

### Slope Operation

33

### Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped

34

### Sound Information and Vibration Information

34

### Guards (Operator Protection)

37

## Product Information Section

### General Information

39

### Identification Information

51

## Operation Section

### Before Operation

59

### Machine Operation

60

## Engine Starting

84

## Operation

85

## Parking

99

## Transportation Information

103

## Towing Information

109

## Engine Starting (Alternate Methods)

111

## Maintenance Section

### Maintenance Access

113

### Lubricant Viscosities and Refill Capacities

118

### Maintenance Support

124

### Maintenance Interval Schedule

127

## Reference Information Section

### Reference Materials

177

## Index Section

### Index

185
Foreword

Literature Information

This manual should be stored in the operator's compartment in the literature holder or seat back literature storage area.

This manual contains safety information, operation instructions, transportation information, lubrication information and maintenance information.

Some photographs or illustrations in this publication show details or attachments that can be different from your machine. Guards and covers might have been removed for illustrative purposes.

Continuing improvement and advancement of product design might have caused changes to your machine which are not included in this publication. Read, study and keep this manual with the machine.

Whenever a question arises regarding your machine, or this publication, please consult your Caterpillar dealer for the latest available information.

Safety

The safety section lists basic safety precautions. In addition, this section identifies the text and locations of warning signs and labels used on the machine.

Read and understand the basic precautions listed in the safety section before operating or performing lubrication, maintenance and repair on this machine.

Operation

The operation section is a reference for the new operator and a refresher for the experienced operator. This section includes a discussion of gauges, switches, machine controls, attachment controls, transportation and towing information.

Photographs and illustrations guide the operator through correct procedures of checking, starting, operating and stopping the machine.

Operating techniques outlined in this publication are basic. Skill and techniques develop as the operator gains knowledge of the machine and its capabilities.

Maintenance

The maintenance section is a guide to equipment care. The Maintenance Interval Schedule (MIS) lists the items to be maintained at a specific service interval. Items without specific intervals are listed under the "When Required" service interval. The Maintenance Interval Schedule lists the page number for the step-by-step instructions required to accomplish the scheduled maintenance. Use the Maintenance Interval Schedule as an index or "one safe source" for all maintenance procedures.

Maintenance Intervals

Use the service hour meter to determine servicing intervals. Calendar intervals shown (daily, weekly, monthly, etc.) can be used instead of service hour meter intervals if they provide more convenient servicing schedules and approximate the indicated service hour meter reading. Recommended service should always be performed at the interval that occurs first.

Under extremely severe, dusty or wet operating conditions, more frequent lubrication than is specified in the maintenance intervals chart might be necessary.

Perform service on items at multiples of the original requirement. For example, at every 500 service hours or 3 months, also service those items listed under every 250 service hours or monthly and every 10 service hours or daily.

California Proposition 65 Warning

Diesel engine exhaust and some of its constituents are known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects, and other reproductive harm.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash hands after handling.**

Certified Engine Maintenance

Proper maintenance and repair is essential to keep the engine and machine systems operating correctly. As the heavy duty off-road diesel engine owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in the Owner Manual, Operation and Maintenance Manual, and Service Manual.
It is prohibited for any person engaged in the business of repairing, servicing, selling, leasing, or trading engines or machines to remove, alter, or render inoperative any emission related device or element of design installed on or in an engine or machine that is in compliance with the regulations (40 CFR Part 89). Certain elements of the machine and engine such as the exhaust system, fuel system, electrical system, intake air system and cooling system may be emission related and should not be altered unless approved by Caterpillar.

**Machine Capacity**

Additional attachments or modifications may exceed machine design capacity which can adversely affect performance characteristics. Included would be stability and system certifications such as brakes, steering, and rollover protective structures (ROPS). Contact your Caterpillar dealer for further information.

**Caterpillar Product Identification Number**

Effective First Quarter 2001 the Caterpillar Product Identification Number (PIN) has changed from 8 to 17 characters. In an effort to provide uniform equipment identification, Caterpillar and other construction equipment manufacturers are moving to comply with the latest version of the product identification numbering standard. Non-road machine PINs are defined by ISO 10261. The new PIN format will apply to all Caterpillar machines and generator sets. The PIN plates and frame marking will display the 17 character PIN. The new format will look like the following:

![Illustration 1](g00751314)

Where:

1. Caterpillar's World Manufacturing Code (characters 1-3)
2. Machine Descriptor (characters 4-8)
3. Check Character (character 9)
4. Machine Indicator Section (MIS) or Product Sequence Number (characters 10-17). These were previously referred to as the Serial Number.

Machines and generator sets produced before First Quarter 2001 will maintain their 8 character PIN format.

Components such as engines, transmissions, axles, etc. and work tools will continue to use an 8 character Serial Number (S/N).
Safety Section

Safety Messages

SMCS Code: 7000; 7405

There are several specific safety messages on this machine. The exact location of the hazards and the description of the hazards are reviewed in this section. Please become familiarized with all safety messages.

Make sure that all of the safety messages are legible. Clean the safety messages or replace the safety messages if you cannot read the words. Replace the illustrations if the illustrations are not legible. When you clean the safety messages, use a cloth, water and soap. Do not use solvent, gasoline, or other harsh chemicals to clean the safety messages. Solvents, gasoline, or harsh chemicals could loosen the adhesive that secures the safety message. Loose adhesive will allow the safety message to fall.

Replace any safety message that is damaged, or missing. If a safety message is attached to a part that is replaced, install a safety message on the replacement part. Any Caterpillar dealer can provide new safety messages.
Illustration 2

(1) Do Not Operate.
(2) Rollover Protective Structure/Falling Object Protective Structure
(3) Jump Starting
(4) Crushing Hazard
(5) Stay Inside Operator Station
(6) Never Permit Riders.
(7) Seat Belt
Illustration 3

(8) Pressurized System
(9) Work Tool Coupler
(10) Cab Support
(11) Brace for the Loader Lift Arms
(12) Crushing Hazard
(13) Accumulator
(14) Aerosol Starting Aid
(15) Armrests
(16) Product Link
(17) High Pressure Oil
Do Not Operate (1)

This warning message is located on the front panel by the rear view mirror.

---

Rollover Protective Structure/ Falling Object Protective Structure (2)

This warning film and the certification film are located inside the cab on the rear left side.

---

**WARNING**

Read and understand the instructions and warnings in the operation and maintenance manuals. Contact any Caterpillar dealer for replacement manuals. Proper care is your responsibility.

Be alert! Know work conditions. Note and avoid all hazards and obstructions. Keep bystanders away when operating.

Fasten seat belt and lower armrest.

Make certain all controls are in neutral position and start engine.

Disengage parking brake.

Machine controls are active.

Failure to follow the instructions or heed the warnings could result in injury or death.

---

Structural damage, an overturn, modification, alteration, or improper repair can impair this structure's protection capability thereby voiding this certification. Do not weld on or drill holes in the structure. Consult a Caterpillar dealer to determine this structure's limitations without voiding its certification.

This machine has been certified to the standards that are listed on the certification plate. The maximum mass of the machine, which includes the operator and the attachments without a payload, should not exceed the mass on the certification film.
Batteries (3)

This warning message is located on the rear door on the left side of the machine near the positive cable terminal.

---

Crush Hazard (4) & (12)

This warning is located on the loader arms of the machines that are equipped with vertical lift.

---

⚠️ WARNING

Improper jumper cable connections can cause explosion resulting in personal injury. Batteries may be located in separate compartments, always connect positive (+) cable to positive (+) terminal of battery connected to starter solenoid and negative (−) cable from external source to engine block or frame.

---

⚠️ WARNING

No clearance for person in this area during operation. Severe injury or death from crushing could occur. Stay away from the work tool while it is in operation.
Stay Inside Operator Station (5)
This warning message is located on the front panel by the rear view mirror.

Beam your body inside the operator station while operating the loader.

Never work with your arms, feet or legs beyond the operator station.

Failure to follow the instructions or heed the warnings will result in injury or death.

Never Permit Riders (6)
This warning message is located inside the cab on the right side by the gauges.

Never permit riders.

Never use work tool for a work platform.

Failure to follow the instructions or heed the warnings could result in injury or death.
Seat Belt (7)

This warning message is located on the ROPS post on the right side.

A seat belt should be worn at all times during machine operation to prevent serious injury or death in the event of an accident or machine overturn. Failure to wear a seat belt during machine operation may result in serious injury or death.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Seat Belt” for more information.

Pressurized System (8)

This warning message is located on the right side of the radiator by the radiator cap.

Pressurized system: Hot coolant can cause serious burn. To open cap, stop engine, wait until radiator is cool. Then loosen cap slowly to relieve the pressure.
Work Tool Coupler (9)
This warning message is located inside the cab on the left side by the gauges.

![Warning Sign]

**WARNING**
Improper Attachment of the Work Tool could result in injury or death.

Do not operate the machine without confirmation that the coupler pins are fully engaged. Follow the operating procedures in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Work Tool Coupler Operation” for the proper procedure for the work tool coupler.

Cab Support (10)
This warning message is located on the right side of the machine near the cab support lever.

![Warning Sign]

**WARNING**
Do not go beneath cab unless cab is empty and support lever is engaged.

Failure to follow the instructions or heed the warnings could result in injury or death.

Brace for the Loader Lift Arms (11)
This warning message is located on the right hand side on the brace for the loader lift arms.

![Warning Sign]

**WARNING**
Loader lift arm brace must be in place when working under raised lift arms.

Failure to follow the instructions or heed the warnings could result in injury or death.

Accumulator (13)

This warning message is located near the accumulator underneath the cab. If your machine is equipped with ride control, there will be an additional accumulator in this location.

Aerosol Starting Aid (14)

This warning message is located on the side of the air cleaner housing.

Armrests (15)

This warning message is located inside the cab on the right side by the gauges.

Aerosol Starting Aid (14)

Do not use ether. This machine is equipped with glow plugs. Using ether can create explosions or fires that can cause personal injury or death. Read and follow the engine starting procedure in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.
Product Link (16)

This safety message is located inside the cab on the right hand window.

---

High Pressure Grease (17)

This safety message is located on the undercarriage by the access panel.

---

**WARNING**

This machine is equipped with a Caterpillar Product Link communication device which must be deactivated within 12 m (40 ft) of a blast zone. Failure to do so could result in serious injury or death.

---

**WARNING**

Personal injury can result from grease under high pressure.

The adjuster cylinder for the track is under high hydraulic pressure. Grease under high pressure can cause injury.

Do not visually inspect the adjuster cylinder to see if grease is released when the valve is opened. Look to see that the track has loosened.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Track - Inspect/Adjust (Detension the Track)” for more information.

---

Safety Messages (Work Tools)

**SMCS Code:** 7000; 7405

There are several specific safety messages on these work tools. The exact location of the hazards and the description of the hazards are reviewed in this section. Please become familiarized with all safety messages.
Make sure that all of the safety messages are legible. Clean the safety messages or replace the safety messages if you cannot read the words. Replace the illustrations if the illustrations are not legible. When you clean the safety messages, use a cloth, water and soap. Do not use solvent, gasoline, or other harsh chemicals to clean the safety messages. Solvents, gasoline, or harsh chemicals could loosen the adhesive that secures the safety message. Loose adhesive will allow the safety message to fall.

Replace any safety message that is damaged, or missing. If a safety message is attached to a part that is replaced, install a safety message on the replacement part. Any Caterpillar dealer can provide new safety messages.
Industrial Grapple Bucket (1)
These warning messages are located on top of the guards for the grapple cylinders.

Utility Fork (2)
These warning messages are located on top of the fork carriage.

**WARNING**
No clearance for person in this area during operation. Severe injury or death from crushing could occur. Stay away from the work tool while it is in operation.
Industrial Grapple Fork (3)

These warning messages are located on the guards for the grapple cylinders.

![Warning 1](g01378775)

**WARNING**

No clearance for person in this area during operation. Severe injury or death from crushing could occur. Stay away from the work tool while it is in operation.

Industrial Grapple Fork (4)

These warning messages are located on top of the fork carriage.

![Warning 2](g01389170)

**WARNING**

No clearance for person in this area during operation. Severe injury or death from impalement could occur. Stay away from the work tool while it is in operation.
Angle Blade (5)
These warning messages are located on the back side of the blade.

![Angle Blade Warning Sign](g01377717)

**WARNING**
No clearance for person in this area during operation. Severe injury or death from crushing could occur. Stay away from the work tool while it is in operation.

Utility Grapple Fork (6)
These warning messages are located on top of the fork carriage.

![Utility Grapple Fork Warning Sign](g01389170)

**WARNING**
No clearance for person in this area during operation. Severe injury or death from impalement could occur. Stay away from the work tool while it is in operation.
Utility Grapple Fork (7)

These warning messages are located on top of the grapple frame.

---

Utility Grapple Bucket (8)

These warning messages are located on top of the grapple frame.

---

Dozer Blade (9)

This warning message is located on top of the dozer blade.

---

**WARNING**

Falling Hazard - Area may be oily and slippery. Do not step on cylinders. Serious injury or death could occur from a fall.
**Dozer Blade (10)**

This warning message is located on top of the dozer blade.

---

**Dozer Blade (11)**

These warning messages are located on the back side of the blade.

---

**Dozer Blade (12)**

This warning is located on right hand side on the back of the blade.

---

**WARNING**

No clearance for person in this area during operation. Severe injury or death from crushing could occur. Stay away from the work tool while it is in operation.

---

**WARNING**

*DO NOT OPERATE OR WORK ON THIS MACHINE UNLESS YOU HAVE READ AND UNDERSTAND THE INSTRUCTIONS AND WARNINGS IN THE OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS. FAILURE TO FOLLOW THE INSTRUCTIONS OR HEED THE WARNINGS COULD RESULT IN INJURY OR DEATH. CONTACT ANY CATERPILLAR DEALER FOR REPLACEMENT MANUALS. PROPER CARE IS YOUR RESPONSIBILITY.*
Grapple Rake (13)

These warning messages are located on top of the grapple frame.

![Warning Symbol]

**WARNING**

No clearance for person in this area during operation. Severe injury or death from crushing could occur. Stay away from the work tool while it is in operation.

Additional Messages

**SMCS Code:** 7000; 7405

There are several specific messages on this machine. Please become familiarized with all messages.

Make sure that all of the messages are legible. Clean the messages or replace the messages if you cannot read the words.

When you clean the messages, use a cloth, water and soap. Do not use solvent, gasoline, or other harsh chemicals to clean the messages. Solvents, gasoline, or harsh chemicals could loosen the adhesive that secures the messages. Loose adhesive will allow the messages to fall.

Replace the illustrations if the illustrations are not legible. Replace any message that is damaged, or missing. If a message is attached to a part that is replaced, install a message on the replacement part.

Consult your Caterpillar dealer for replacement of messages.

Product Link (If Equipped)

If your machine is equipped with the Product Link System, this film will be located in the cab. The Product Link System is a satellite communication device that transmits information regarding the machine back to Caterpillar and Caterpillar dealers and customers. All logged events and diagnostic codes that are available to the Caterpillar Electronic Technician (ET) on the CAT data link can be sent to the satellite. Information can also be sent to the Product Link System. The information is used to improve Caterpillar products and Caterpillar services.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Product Link” for more information.

General Hazard Information

**SMCS Code:** 7000
Attach a “Do Not Operate” warning tag or a similar warning tag to the start switch or to the controls. Attach the warning tag before you service the equipment or before you repair the equipment. These warning tags (Special Instruction, SEHS7332) are available from your Cat dealer.

**WARNING**

Operating the machine while distracted can result in the loss of machine control. Use extreme caution when using any device while operating the machine. Operating the machine while distracted can result in personal injury or death.

Know the width of your equipment in order to maintain proper clearance when you operate the equipment near fences or near boundary obstacles.

Be aware of high voltage power lines and power cables that are buried. If the machine comes in contact with these hazards, serious injury or death may occur from electrocution.

Illustration 7

g00702020

Wear a hard hat, protective glasses, and other protective equipment, as required.

Do not wear loose clothing or jewelry that can snag on controls or on other parts of the equipment.

Make sure that all protective guards and all covers are secured in place on the equipment.

Keep the equipment free from foreign material. Remove debris, oil, tools, and other items from the deck, from walkways, and from steps.

Secure all loose items such as lunch boxes, tools, and other items that are not a part of the equipment.

Know the appropriate work site hand signals and the personnel that are authorized to give the hand signals. Accept hand signals from one person only.

Do not smoke when you service an air conditioner. Also, do not smoke if refrigerant gas may be present. Inhaling the fumes that are released from a flame that contacts air conditioner refrigerant can cause bodily harm or death. Inhaling gas from air conditioner refrigerant through a lighted cigarette can cause bodily harm or death.

Never put maintenance fluids into glass containers. Drain all liquids into a suitable container.

Obey all local regulations for the disposal of liquids.

Use all cleaning solutions with care. Report all necessary repairs.

Do not allow unauthorized personnel on the equipment.

Unless you are instructed otherwise, perform maintenance with the equipment in the servicing position. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual for the procedure for placing the equipment in the servicing position.

When you perform maintenance above ground level, use appropriate devices such as ladders or man lift machines. If equipped, use the machine anchorage points and use approved fall arrest harnesses and lanyards.

**Pressurized Air and Water**

Pressurized air and/or water can cause debris and/or hot water to be blown out. The debris and/or hot water could result in personal injury.

When pressurized air and/or pressurized water is used for cleaning, wear protective clothing, protective shoes, and eye protection. Eye protection includes goggles or a protective face shield.

The maximum air pressure for cleaning purposes must be reduced to 205 kPa (30 psi) when the nozzle is deadheaded and the nozzle is used with an effective chip deflector and personal protective equipment. The maximum water pressure for cleaning purposes must be below 275 kPa (40 psi).

**Trapped Pressure**

Pressure can be trapped in a hydraulic system. Releasing trapped pressure can cause sudden machine movement or attachment movement. Use caution if you disconnect hydraulic lines or fittings. High-pressure oil that is released can cause a hose to whip. High-pressure oil that is released can cause oil to spray. Fluid penetration can cause serious injury and possible death.
Fluid Penetration

Pressure can be trapped in the hydraulic circuit long after the engine has been stopped. The pressure can cause hydraulic fluid or items such as pipe plugs to escape rapidly if the pressure is not relieved correctly.

Do not remove any hydraulic components or parts until pressure has been relieved or personal injury may occur. Do not disassemble any hydraulic components or parts until pressure has been relieved or personal injury may occur. Refer to the Service Manual for any procedures that are required to relieve the hydraulic pressure.

Always use a board or cardboard when you check for a leak. Leaking fluid that is under pressure can penetrate body tissue. Fluid penetration can cause serious injury and possible death. A pin hole leak can cause severe injury. If fluid is injected into your skin, you must get treatment immediately. Seek treatment from a doctor that is familiar with this type of injury.

Containing Fluid Spillage

Care must be taken in order to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the equipment. Prepare to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component that contains fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, NENG2500, “Caterpillar Dealer Service Tool Catalog” for the following items:

- Tools that are suitable for collecting fluids and equipment that is suitable for collecting fluids
- Tools that are suitable for containing fluids and equipment that is suitable for containing fluids

Obey all local regulations for the disposal of liquids.

Inhalation

Exhaust

Use caution. Exhaust fumes can be hazardous to your health. If you operate the machine in an enclosed area, adequate ventilation is necessary.

Asbestos Information

Cat equipment and replacement parts that are shipped from Caterpillar are asbestos free. Caterpillar recommends the use of only genuine Cat replacement parts. Use the following guidelines when you handle any replacement parts that contain asbestos or when you handle asbestos debris.

Use caution. Avoid inhaling dust that might be generated when you handle components that contain asbestos fibers. Inhaling this dust can be hazardous to your health. The components that may contain asbestos fibers are brake pads, brake bands, lining material, clutch plates, and some gaskets. The asbestos that is used in these components is bound in a resin or sealed in some way. Normal handling is not hazardous unless airborne dust that contains asbestos is generated.

If dust that may contain asbestos is present, there are several guidelines that should be followed:

- Never use compressed air for cleaning.
- Avoid brushing materials that contain asbestos.
- Avoid grinding materials that contain asbestos.
- Use a wet method in order to clean up asbestos materials.
- A vacuum cleaner that is equipped with a high efficiency particulate air filter (HEPA) can also be used.
Safety Section
Crushing Prevention and Cutting Prevention

- Use exhaust ventilation on permanent machining jobs.
- Wear an approved respirator if there is no other way to control the dust.
- Comply with applicable rules and regulations for the workplace. In the United States, use Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) requirements. These OSHA requirements can be found in "29 CFR 1910.1001".
- Obey environmental regulations for the disposal of asbestos.
- Stay away from areas that might have asbestos particles in the air.

Dispose of Waste Properly

![Illustration 10]

Improperly disposing of waste can threaten the environment. Potentially harmful fluids should be disposed of according to local regulations.

Always use leakproof containers when you drain fluids. Do not pour waste onto the ground, down a drain, or into any source of water.

Burn Prevention

SMCS Code: 7000

Do not touch any part of an operating engine. Allow the engine to cool before any maintenance is performed on the engine. Relieve all pressure in the air system, in the oil system, in the lubrication system, in the fuel system, or in the cooling system before any lines, fittings, or related items are disconnected.

Coolant

When the engine is at operating temperature, the engine coolant is hot. The coolant is also under pressure. The radiator and all lines to the heaters or to the engine contain hot coolant.

Any contact with hot coolant or with steam can cause severe burns. Allow cooling system components to cool before the cooling system is drained.
Check the coolant level only after the engine has been stopped.

Ensure that the filler cap is cool before removing the filler cap. The filler cap must be cool enough to touch with a bare hand. Remove the filler cap slowly in order to relieve pressure.

Cooling system conditioner contains alkali. Alkali can cause personal injury. Do not allow alkali to contact the skin, the eyes, or the mouth.

**Oils**

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil to contact the skin. Also, do not allow hot components to contact the skin.

Remove the hydraulic tank filler cap only after the engine has been stopped. The filler cap must be cool enough to touch with a bare hand. Follow the standard procedure in this manual in order to remove the hydraulic tank filler cap.

**Batteries**

The liquid in a battery is an electrolyte. Electrolyte is an acid that can cause personal injury. Do not allow electrolyte to contact the skin or the eyes.

Do not smoke while checking the battery electrolyte levels. Batteries give off flammable fumes which can explode.

Always wear protective glasses when you work with batteries. Wash hands after touching batteries. The use of gloves is recommended.

**Fire Prevention and Explosion Prevention**

**SMCS Code:** 7000

---

**General**

All fuels, most lubricants, and some coolant mixtures are flammable.

To minimize the risk of fire or explosion, Caterpillar recommends the following actions.

Always perform a Walk-Around Inspection, which may help you identify a fire hazard. Do not operate a machine when a fire hazard exists. Contact your Cat dealer for service.

Understand the use of the primary exit and alternative exit on the machine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Alternative Exit”.

Do not operate a machine with a fluid leak. Repair leaks and clean up fluids before resuming machine operation. Fluids that are leaking or spilled onto hot surfaces or onto electrical components can cause a fire. A fire may cause personal injury or death.

Remove flammable material such as leaves, twigs, papers, trash, and so on. These items may accumulate in the engine compartment or around other hot areas and hot parts on the machine.

Keep the access doors to major machine compartments closed and access doors in working condition in order to permit the use of fire suppression equipment, in case a fire should occur.

Clean all accumulations of flammable materials such as fuel, oil, and debris from the machine.

Do not operate the machine near any flame.

Keep shields in place. Exhaust shields (if equipped) protect hot exhaust components from oil spray or fuel spray in case of a break in a line, in a hose, or in a seal. Exhaust shields must be installed correctly.

Do not weld or flame cut on tanks or lines that contain flammable fluids or flammable material. Empty and purge the lines and tanks. Then clean the lines and tanks with a nonflammable solvent prior to welding or flame cutting. Ensure that the components are properly grounded in order to avoid unwanted arcs.

Dust that is generated from repairing nonmetallic hoods or fenders may be flammable and/or explosive. Repair such components in a well ventilated area away from open flames or sparks. Use suitable Personal Protection Equipment (PPE).
Inspect all lines and hoses for wear or deterioration. Replace damaged lines and hoses. The lines and the hoses should have adequate support and secure clamps. Tighten all connections to the recommended torque. Damage to the protective cover or insulation may provide fuel for fires.

Store fuels and lubricants in properly marked containers away from unauthorized personnel. Store oily rags and flammable materials in protective containers. Do not smoke in areas that are used for storing flammable materials.

Battery and Battery Cables

Caterpillar recommends the following in order to minimize the risk of fire or an explosion related to the battery.

Do not operate a machine if battery cables or related parts show signs of wear or damage. Contact your Cat dealer for service.

Follow safe procedures for engine starting with jump-start cables. Improper jumper cable connections can cause an explosion that may result in injury. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Engine Starting with Jump Start Cables” for specific instructions.

Do not charge a frozen battery. This may cause an explosion.

Gases from a battery can explode. Keep any open flames or sparks away from the top of a battery. Do not smoke in battery charging areas.

Never check the battery charge by placing a metal object across the terminal posts. Use a voltmeter in order to check the battery charge.

Daily inspect battery cables that are in areas that are visible. Inspect cables, clips, straps, and other restraints for damage. Replace any damaged parts. Check for signs of the following, which can occur over time due to use and environmental factors:

- Fraying
- Abrasion
- Cracking
• Discoloration
• Cuts on the insulation of the cable
• Fouling
• Corroded terminals, damaged terminals, and loose terminals

Replace damaged battery cable(s) and replace any related parts. Eliminate any fouling, which may have caused insulation failure or related component damage or wear. Ensure that all components are reinstalled correctly.

An exposed wire on the battery cable may cause a short to ground if the exposed area comes into contact with a grounded surface. A battery cable short produces heat from the battery current, which may be a fire hazard.

An exposed wire on the ground cable between the battery and the disconnect switch may cause the disconnect switch to be bypassed if the exposed area comes into contact with a grounded surface. This may result in an unsafe condition for servicing the machine. Repair components or replace components before servicing the machine.

**WARNING**

Fire on a machine can result in personal injury or death. Exposed battery cables that come into contact with a grounded connection can result in fires. Replace cables and related parts that show signs of wear or damage. Contact your Cat dealer.

**Wiring**

Check electrical wires daily. If any of the following conditions exist, replace parts before you operate the machine.

• Fraying
• Signs of abrasion or wear
• Cracking
• Discoloration
• Cuts on insulation
• Other damage

Make sure that all clamps, guards, clips, and straps are reinstalled correctly. This will help to prevent vibration, rubbing against other parts, and excessive heat during machine operation.

Attaching electrical wiring to hoses and tubes that contain flammable fluids or combustible fluids should be avoided.

Consult your Cat dealer for repair or for replacement parts.

Keep wiring and electrical connections free of debris.

**Lines, Tubes, and Hoses**

Do not bend high-pressure lines. Do not strike high-pressure lines. Do not install any lines that are bent or damaged. Use the appropriate backup wrenches in order to tighten all connections to the recommended torque.

Check lines, tubes, and hoses carefully. Wear Personal Protection Equipment (PPE) in order to check for leaks. Always use a board or cardboard when you check for a leak. Leaking fluid that is under pressure can penetrate body tissue. Fluid penetration can cause serious injury and possible death. A pin hole leak can cause severe injury. If fluid is injected into your skin, you must get treatment immediately. Seek treatment from a doctor that is familiar with this type of injury.

Replace the affected parts if any of the following conditions are present:

• End fittings are damaged or leaking.
• Outer coverings are chafed or cut.
• Wires are exposed.
• Outer coverings are swelling or ballooning.
• Flexible parts of the hoses are kinked.
• Outer covers have exposed embedded armoring.
• End fittings are displaced.
Make sure that all clamps, guards, and heat shields are installed correctly. During machine operation, this will help to prevent vibration, rubbing against other parts, excessive heat, and failure of lines, tubes, and hoses.

Do not operate a machine when a fire hazard exists. Repair any lines that are corroded, loose, or damaged. Leaks may provide fuel for fires. Consult your Cat dealer for repair or for replacement parts. Use genuine Cat parts or the equivalent, for capabilities of both the pressure limit and temperature limit.

**Ether**

Ether (if equipped) is commonly used in cold-weather applications. Ether is flammable and poisonous.

Follow the correct cold engine starting procedures. Refer to the section in the Operation and Maintenance Manual with the label “Engine Starting”.

Do not spray ether manually into an engine if the machine is equipped with a thermal starting aid for cold weather starting.

Use ether in well ventilated areas. Do not smoke while you are replacing an ether cylinder or while you are using an ether spray.

Do not store ether cylinders in living areas or in the operator compartment of a machine. Do not store ether cylinders in direct sunlight or in temperatures above 49° C (120.2° F). Keep ether cylinders away from open flames or sparks.

Dispose of used ether cylinders properly. Do not puncture an ether cylinder. Keep ether cylinders away from unauthorized personnel.

**Fire Extinguisher**

As an additional safety measure, keep a fire extinguisher on the machine.

Be familiar with the operation of the fire extinguisher. Inspect the fire extinguisher and service the fire extinguisher regularly. Follow the recommendations on the instruction plate.

Consider installation of an aftermarket Fire Suppression System, if the application and working conditions warrant the installation.

**Fire Safety**

**SMCS Code:** 1000; 6700; 7000

**Note:** Locate secondary exits and how to use the secondary exits before you operate the machine.

**Note:** Locate fire extinguishers and how to use a fire extinguisher before you operate the machine.

If you find that you are involved in a machine fire, your safety and that of others on site is the top priority. The following actions should only be performed if the actions do not present a danger or risk to you and any nearby people. At all times you should assess the risk of personal injury and move away to a safe distance as soon as you feel unsafe.

Move the machine away from nearby combustible material such as fuel/oil stations, structures, trash, mulch, and timber.

Lower any implements and turn off the engine as soon as possible. If you leave the engine running, the engine will continue to feed a fire. The fire will be fed from any damaged hoses that are attached to the engine or pumps.

If possible, turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position. Disconnecting the battery will remove the ignition source in the event of an electrical short. Disconnecting the battery will eliminate a second ignition source if electrical wiring is damaged by the fire, resulting in a short circuit.

Notify emergency personnel of the fire and your location.

If your machine is equipped with a fire suppression system, follow the manufacturers procedure for activating the system.

**Note:** Fire suppression systems need to be regularly inspected by qualified personnel. You must be trained to operate the fire suppression system.

Use the on-board fire extinguisher and use the following procedure:

1. Pull the pin.
2. Aim the extinguisher or nozzle at the base of the fire.
3. Squeeze the handle and release the extinguishing agent.
4. Sweep the extinguisher from side to side across the base of the fire until the fire is out.
Remember, if you are unable to do anything else, shut off the machine before exiting. By shutting off the machine, fuels will not continue to be pumped into the fire.

If the fire grows out of control, be aware of the following risks:

- Tires on wheeled machines pose a risk of explosion as tires burn. Hot shrapnel and debris can be thrown great distances in an explosion.
- Tanks, accumulators, hoses, and fittings can rupture in a fire, spraying fuels and shrapnel over a large area.
- Remember that nearly all of the fluids on the machine are flammable, including coolant and oils. Additionally, plastics, rubbers, fabrics, and resins in fiberglass panels are also flammable.

Electrical Storm Injury Prevention

SMCS Code: 7000

When lightning is striking in the vicinity of the machine, the operator should never attempt the following procedures:

- Mount the machine.
- Dismount the machine.

If you are in the operator's station during an electrical storm, stay in the operator's station. If you are on the ground during an electrical storm, stay away from the vicinity of the machine.

Before Starting Engine

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Start the engine only from the operator compartment. Never short across the starter terminals or across the batteries. Shorting could damage the electrical system by bypassing the engine neutral start system.

Inspect the condition of the seat belt and of the mounting hardware. Replace any parts that are worn or damaged. Regardless of appearance, replace the seat belt after three years of use. Do not use a seat belt extension on a retractable seat belt.

Adjust the seat so that full pedal travel can be achieved with the operator's back against the back of the seat.

Make sure that the machine is equipped with a lighting system that is adequate for the job conditions. Make sure that all machine lights are working properly.

Before you start the engine and before you move the machine, make sure that no one is underneath the machine, around the machine, or on the machine. Make sure that the area is free of personnel.

Visibility Information

SMCS Code: 7000

Before you start the machine, perform a walk-around inspection in order to ensure that there are no hazards around the machine.
While the machine is in operation, constantly survey the area around the machine in order to identify potential hazards as hazards become visible around the machine.

Your machine may be equipped with visual aids. Some examples of visual aids are Closed Circuit Television (CCTV) and mirrors. Before operating the machine, ensure that the visual aids are in proper working condition and that the visual aids are clean. Adjust the visual aids using the procedures that are located in this Operation and Maintenance Manual. If equipped, the Work Area Vision System shall be adjusted according to Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU8157, “Work Area Vision System”.

It may not be possible to provide direct visibility on large machines to all areas around the machine. Appropriate job site organization is required in order to minimize hazards that are caused by restricted visibility. Job site organization is a collection of rules and procedures that coordinates machines and people that work together in the same area. Examples of job site organization include the following:

- Safety instructions
- Controlled patterns of machine movement and vehicle movement
- Workers that direct traffic to move when it is safe
- Restricted areas
- Operator training
- Warning symbols or warning signs on machines or on vehicles
- A system of communication
- Communication between workers and operators prior to approaching the machine

Modifications of the machine configuration by the user that result in a restriction of visibility shall be evaluated.

**Engine Starting**

**SMCS Code:** 1000; 7000

If a warning tag is attached to the start switch or to the controls, do not start the engine. Also, do not move any controls.

Move all hydraulic controls to the NEUTRAL position before you start the engine.

Diesel engine exhaust contains products of combustion which can be harmful to your health. Always start the engine in a well ventilated area. Always operate the engine in a well ventilated area. If you are in an enclosed area, vent the exhaust to the outside.

**Before Operation**

**SMCS Code:** 7000

Video tapes and safety information are available in English for the machine. A list of some of the material is available in the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Reference Material”. Consult your Caterpillar dealer in order to obtain copies of the material. The information should be reviewed by every person that operates the machine.

Clear all personnel from the machine and from the area.

Clear all obstacles from the path of the machine. Beware of hazards such as wires, ditches, etc.

Make sure that all windows are clean. Secure all doors in the closed position. Secure the windows in the open position or in the shut position.

Make sure that the machine horn, the backup alarm and all other warning devices are working properly.

Fasten the seat belt securely. Lower the armrests.

**Operation**

**SMCS Code:** 7000

Only operate the machine while you are in the seat. The seat belt must be fastened while you operate the machine. Only operate the controls while the engine is running.

Before you move the machine, you must be certain that no one will be endangered.

While you operate the machine and the work tool slowly in an open area, check for proper operation of all controls and all protective devices.

Do not allow riders on the machine. Never use the work tool for a work platform.

Note any needed repairs during machine operation. Report any needed repairs.
Use Caterpillar Approved Work Tools on this machine. Obey all the lift restrictions. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Caterpillar Approved Work Tools” for the approved work tools and the lift restriction information.

Carry work tools low. Lower the lift arms fully. Tilt back the work tool in order to keep the work tool off of the ground. Do not go close to the edge of a cliff, an excavation, or an overhang.

If the machine begins to sideslip downward on a grade, immediately remove the load and turn the machine downhill.

Avoid any conditions that can lead to tipping the machine. The machine can tip when you work on hills, on banks and on slopes. Also, the machine can tip when you cross ditches, ridges or other unexpected obstacles.

Avoid operating the machine across the slope. When possible, operate the machine up the slopes and down the slopes.

Maintain control of the machine. Do not overload the machine beyond the machine capacity.

Never straddle a wire cable. Never allow personnel to straddle a wire cable.

Know the maximum dimensions of your machine.

Always keep the Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS) installed during machine operation.

This machine is designed to operate in the ambient temperature range of $-32 \, ^\circ C$ ($-25 \, ^\circ F$) to $43 \, ^\circ C$ ($109.4 \, ^\circ F$).

Observe all applicable local government regulations when you use the Skid Steer Loader to lift heavy objects.

Work Tools

SMCS Code: 6700

Only use work tools that are approved by Caterpillar for use on Caterpillar machines. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Caterpillar Approved Work Tools”.

If you are in doubt about the compatibility of a particular work tool with your machine, consult your Caterpillar dealer.

Make sure that all necessary guarding is in place on the host machine and on the work tool.

Keep all windows and doors closed on the host machine. Always wear protective glasses. Always wear the protective equipment that is recommended in the work tool’s operation manual. Wear any other protective equipment that is required for the operating environment.

To prevent personnel from being struck by flying objects, ensure that all personnel are out of the work area.

While you are performing any maintenance, any testing, or any adjustments to the work tool stay clear of the following areas: cutting edges, pinching surfaces, and crushing surfaces.

Parking

SMCS Code: 7000

Park on a level surface. If you must park on a grade, chock the machine.

1. Move the joystick control slowly to the NEUTRAL position in order to stop the machine.
2. Move the governor control lever to the LOW IDLE position.
3. Lower the loader arms and tilt the linkage so that the work tool rests firmly on the ground.
4. Move the hydraulic controls to the NEUTRAL position.
5. Turn the engine start switch key to OFF position and remove the key.
6. Raise the armrests and exit the machine.

Slope Operation

SMCS Code: 7000

Machines that are operating safely in various applications depend on these criteria: the machine model, configuration, machine maintenance, operating speed of the machine, conditions of the terrain, fluid levels, and tire inflation pressures. The most important criteria are the skill and judgment of the operator.
A well trained operator that follows the instructions in the Operation and Maintenance Manual has the greatest impact on stability. Operator training provides a person with the following abilities: observation of working and environmental conditions, feel for the machine, identification of potential hazards, and operating the machine safely by making appropriate decisions.

When you work on side hills and when you work on slopes, consider the following important points:

**Speed of travel** – At higher speeds, forces of inertia tend to make the machine less stable.

**Roughness of terrain or surface** – The machine may be less stable with uneven terrain.

**Direction of travel** – Avoid operating the machine across the slope. When possible, operate the machine up the slopes and operate the machine down the slopes. Place the heaviest end of the machine uphill when you are working on an incline.

**Mounted equipment** – Balance of the machine may be impeded by the following components: equipment that is mounted on the machine, machine configuration, weights, and counterweights.

**Nature of surface** – Ground that has been newly filled with earth may collapse from the weight of the machine.

**Surface material** – Rocks and moisture of the surface material may drastically affect the machine’s traction and machine’s stability. Rocky surfaces may promote side slipping of the machine.

**Slippage due to excessive loads** – This may cause downhill tracks or downhill tires to dig into the ground, which will increase the angle of the machine.

**Width of tracks or tires** – Narrower tracks or narrower tires further increase the digging into the ground which causes the machine to be less stable.

**Implements attached to the drawbar** – This may decrease the weight on the uphill tracks. This may also decrease the weight on the uphill tires. The decreased weight will cause the machine to be less stable.

**Height of the working load of the machine** – When the working loads are in higher positions, the stability of the machine is reduced.

**Operated equipment** – Be aware of performance features of the equipment in operation and the effects on machine stability.

**Operating techniques** – Keep all attachments or pulled loads low to the ground for optimum stability.

**Machine systems have limitations on slopes** – Slopes can affect the proper function and operation of the various machine systems. These machine systems are needed for machine control.

**Note:** Safe operation on steep slopes may require special machine maintenance. Excellent skill of the operator and proper equipment for specific applications are also required. Consult the Operation and Maintenance Manual sections for the proper fluid level requirements and intended machine use.

---

**Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped**

**SMCS Code:** 7000

Before lowering any equipment with the engine stopped, clear the area around the equipment of all personnel. The procedure to use will vary with the type of equipment to be lowered. Keep in mind most systems use a high pressure fluid or air to raise or lower equipment. The procedure will cause high pressure air, hydraulic, or some other media to be released in order to lower the equipment. Wear appropriate personal protective equipment and follow the established procedure in the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped” in the Operation Section of the manual.

**Sound Information and Vibration Information**

**SMCS Code:** 7000

**Sound Level Information**

The operator Equivalent Sound Pressure Level (Leq) is 87 dB(A) when "ANSI/SAE J1166 OCT 98" is used to measure the value for an enclosed cab. This is a work cycle sound exposure level. The cab was properly installed and maintained. The test was conducted with the cab doors and the cab windows closed.
Hearing protection may be needed when the machine is operated with an open operator station for extended periods or in a noisy environment. Hearing protection may be needed when the machine is operated with a cab that is not properly maintained or when the doors and windows are open for extended periods or in a noisy environment.

The average exterior sound pressure level is 75 dB(A) when the “SAE J88 Apr 95 - Constant Speed Moving Test” procedure is used to measure the value for the standard machine. The measurement was conducted under the following conditions: distance of 15 m (49.2 ft) and “the machine moving forward in an intermediate gear ratio”.

**Sound Level Information for Machines in European Union Countries and in Countries that Adopt the “EU Directives”**

The dynamic operator sound pressure level is 85 dB(A) when “ISO 6396:1992” is used to measure the value for an enclosed cab. The cab was properly installed and maintained. The test was conducted with the cab doors and the cab windows closed.

**“European Physical Agents Directive (Vibration) 2002/44/EC”**

**Vibration Data for Multi Terrain Loaders**

**Information concerning hand/arm vibration level**

When the machine is operated according to the intended use, the hand/arm vibration of this machine is below 2.5 meter per second squared.

**Information concerning whole body vibration level**

This section provides vibration data and a method for estimating the vibration level for multi terrain loaders.

**Note:** Vibration levels are influenced by many different parameters. Many items are listed below.

- Operator training, behavior, mode, and stress
- Job site organization, preparation, environment, weather, and material
- Machine type, quality of the seat, quality of the suspension system, attachments, and condition of the equipment

It is not possible to get precise vibration levels for this machine. The expected vibration levels can be estimated with the information in Table 1 in order to calculate the daily vibration exposure. A simple evaluation of the machine application can be used.

Estimate the vibration levels for the three vibration directions. For typical operating conditions, use the average vibration levels as the estimated level. With an experienced operator and smooth terrain, subtract the Scenario Factors from the average vibration level in order to obtain the estimated vibration level. For aggressive operations and severe terrain, add the Scenario Factors to the average vibration level in order to obtain the estimated vibration level.

**Note:** All vibration levels are in meter per second squared.
Table 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Machine Type</th>
<th>Typical Operating Activity</th>
<th>Vibration Levels</th>
<th>Scenario Factors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X axis</td>
<td>Y axis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compact Track Loader</td>
<td>v-shape motion</td>
<td>1,21</td>
<td>1,00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Refer to “ISO/TR 25398 Mechanical Vibration - Guideline for the assessment of exposure to whole body vibration of ride on operated earthmoving machines” for more information about vibration. This publication uses data that is measured by international institutes, organizations and manufacturers. This document provides information about the whole body exposure of operators of earthmoving equipment. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual Supplement, SEBU8257 for more information about machine vibration levels.

The Caterpillar suspension seat meets the criteria of “ISO 7096”. This represents vertical vibration level under severe operating conditions. This seat is tested with the input “spectral class EM9”. The seat has a transmissibility factor of “SEAT<0.9”.

The whole body vibration level of the machine varies. There is a range of values. The low value is 0.5 meter per second squared. The machine meets the short term level for the design of the seat in “ISO 7096”. The value is 1.59 meter per second squared for this machine.

**Guidelines for Reducing Vibration Levels on Earthmoving Equipment**

Properly adjust machines. Properly maintain machines. Operate machines smoothly. Maintain the conditions of the terrain. The following guidelines can help reduce the whole body vibration level:

1. Use the right type and size of machine, equipment, and attachments.
2. Maintain machines according to the manufacturer's recommendations.
   a. Tire pressures
   b. Brake and steering systems
   c. Controls, hydraulic system and linkages
3. Keep the terrain in good condition.
   a. Remove any large rocks or obstacles.
   b. Fill any ditches and holes.
   c. Provide machines and schedule time in order to maintain the conditions of the terrain.
4. Use a seat that meets “ISO 7096”. Keep the seat maintained and adjusted.
   a. Adjust the seat and suspension for the weight and the size of the operator.
   b. Inspect and maintain the seat suspension and adjustment mechanisms.
5. Perform the following operations smoothly.
   a. Steer
   b. Brake
   c. Accelerate.
   d. Shift the gears.
6. Move the attachments smoothly.
7. Adjust the machine speed and the route in order to minimize the vibration level.
   a. Drive around obstacles and rough terrain.
   b. Slow down when it is necessary to go over rough terrain.
8. Minimize vibrations for a long work cycle or a long travel distance.
   a. Use machines that are equipped with suspension systems.
   b. Use the ride control system on multi terrain loaders.
   c. If no ride control system is available, reduce speed in order to prevent bounce.
   d. Haul the machines between workplaces.
9. Less operator comfort may be caused by other risk factors. The following guidelines can be effective in order to provide better operator comfort:
   a. Adjust the seat and adjust the controls in order to achieve good posture.
   b. Adjust the mirrors in order to minimize twisted posture.
c. Provide breaks in order to reduce long periods of sitting.

d. Avoid jumping from the cab.

e. Minimize repeated handling of loads and lifting of loads.

f. Minimize any shocks and impacts during sports and leisure activities.

**Sources**

The vibration information and calculation procedure is based on “ISO/TR 25398 Mechanical Vibration - Guideline for the assessment of exposure to whole body vibration of ride on operated earthmoving machines”. Harmonized data is measured by international institutes, organizations and manufacturers.

This literature provides information about assessing the whole body vibration exposure of operators of earthmoving equipment. The method is based on measured vibration emission under real working conditions for all machines.

You should check the original directive. This document summarizes part of the content of the applicable law. This document is not meant to substitute the original sources. Other parts of these documents are based on information from the United Kingdom Health and Safety Executive.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual Supplement, SEBU8257 for more information about vibration.

Consult your local Caterpillar dealer for more information about machine features that minimize vibration levels. Consult your local Caterpillar dealer about safe machine operation.

Use the website in order to find your local dealer.

Caterpillar, Inc.
www.cat.com

**Guards (Operator Protection)**

**SMCS Code**: 7150-MCH; 7325

There are different types of guards that are used to protect the operator. The machine and the machine application determines the type of guard that should be used.

A daily inspection of the guards is required in order to check for structures that are bent, cracked or loose. Never operate a machine with a damaged structure.

The operator becomes exposed to a hazardous situation if the machine is used improperly or if poor operating techniques are used. This situation can occur even though a machine is equipped with an appropriate protective guard. Follow the established operating procedures that are recommended for your machine.

**Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS), Falling Object Protective Structure (FOPS) or Tip Over Protection Structure (TOPS)**

The ROPS/FOPS Structure (if equipped) on your machine is specifically designed, tested and certified for that machine. Any alteration or any modification to the ROPS/FOPS Structure could weaken the structure. This places the operator into an unprotected environment. Modifications or attachments that cause the machine to exceed the weight that is stamped on the certification plate also place the operator into an unprotected environment. Excessive weight may inhibit the brake performance, the steering performance and the ROPS. The protection that is offered by the ROPS/FOPS Structure will be impaired if the ROPS/FOPS Structure has structural damage. Damage to the structure can be caused by an overturn, a falling object, a collision, etc.

Do not mount items (fire extinguishers, first aid kits, work lights, etc) by welding brackets to the ROPS/FOPS Structure or by drilling holes in the ROPS/FOPS Structure. Welding brackets or drilling holes in the ROPS/FOPS Structures can weaken the structures. Consult your Caterpillar dealer for mounting guidelines.

The Tip Over Protection Structure (TOPS) is another type of guard that is used on mini hydraulic excavators. This structure protects the operator in the event of a tipover. The same guidelines for the inspection, the maintenance and the modification of the ROPS/FOPS Structure are required for the Tip Over Protection Structure.

**Other Guards (If Equipped)**

Protection from flying objects and/or falling objects is required for special applications. Logging applications and demolition applications are two examples that require special protection.
A front guard needs to be installed when a work tool that creates flying objects is used. Mesh front guards that are approved by Caterpillar or polycarbonate front guards that are approved by Caterpillar are available for machines with a cab or an open canopy. On machines that are equipped with cabs, the windows should also be closed. Safety glasses are recommended when flying hazards exist for machines with cabs and machines with open canopies.

If the work material extends above the cab, top guards and front guards should be used. Typical examples of this type of application are listed below:

- Demolition applications
- Rock quarries
- Forestry products

Additional guards may be required for specific applications or work tools. The Operation and Maintenance Manual for your machine or your work tool will provide specific requirements for the guards. Consult your Caterpillar dealer for additional information.
Product Information Section

General Information

Rated Load

SMCS Code: 6001; 6136; 6542; 7000

Bucket Rated Load

**WARNING**

Failure to comply to the rated load can cause possible personal injury or property damage. Review the rated load of a particular work tool before performing any operation. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

**Note:** Rated loads should be used as a guide. Attachments, uneven ground conditions, soft ground conditions, or poor ground conditions have effects on rated loads. The operator is responsible for being aware of these effects.

**WARNING**

Machine stability is affected by many factors, including the type of work tool and the position of a work tool.

Machine stability and machine control can be significantly affected if a work tool is not installed. Operating a machine without a work tool can lead to loss of control or tipping of the machine which could result in serious injury or death.

When you operate a machine without a work tool, avoid the following conditions:

- excessive speed
- sharp turns
- abrupt implement movement
- slopes and uneven ground

Rated loads are based upon a standard machine with the following conditions:

- Full fuel tank
- Caterpillar bucket
- 75 kg (165 lb) operator

Rated loads will vary with different attachments. Consult your Caterpillar dealer regarding the rated load for specific attachments.

The rated operating load for Skid Steer Loaders that are equipped with rubber tires is defined by the SAE standard “J818:2007” and by the “EN 474-3:2006” as 50% of the full static tipping load. The ground is hard and the ground is level. The rated operating load for machines that are equipped with steel tracks is defined by the SAE standard “J818:2007” and by the “EN 474-3:2006” as 35% of the full static tipping load. The ground is soft and the ground is not level.

The corresponding dump clearance is given for each bucket at maximum lift height and at a 40 degree dump angle. The reach is given for each bucket at maximum lift height and at a 40 degree dump angle. Clearance is measured from the ground to the bucket edge in order to dump the load. The reach is measured from the front of the track to the bucket edge.

The following tables provide the Rated Operating Capacity (ROC) for the standard machine configuration with a bucket.
### Table 2

#### Dirt Buckets with Bolt on Edge

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Models</th>
<th>P/N</th>
<th>279-5441</th>
<th>285-6090</th>
<th>268-4083</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>232 kg</td>
<td>248 kg</td>
<td>264 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>511 lb</td>
<td>546 lb</td>
<td>582 lb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bucket</td>
<td>1676 mm</td>
<td>1829 mm</td>
<td>1981 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>66 in</td>
<td>72 in</td>
<td>78 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1012 mm</td>
<td>1006 mm</td>
<td>1001 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2230 lb</td>
<td>2218 lb</td>
<td>2206 lb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>279C</td>
<td>Dump Clearance</td>
<td>2397 mm</td>
<td>2397 mm</td>
<td>2397 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>94 in</td>
<td>94 in</td>
<td>94 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>605 mm</td>
<td>605 mm</td>
<td>605 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24 in</td>
<td>24 in</td>
<td>24 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>289C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1205 kg</td>
<td>1199 kg</td>
<td>1194 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2656 lb</td>
<td>2644 lb</td>
<td>2633 lb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dump Clearance</td>
<td>2507 mm</td>
<td>2507 mm</td>
<td>2507 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>99 in</td>
<td>99 in</td>
<td>99 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>920 mm</td>
<td>920 mm</td>
<td>920 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36 in</td>
<td>36 in</td>
<td>36 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1302 kg</td>
<td>1296 kg</td>
<td>1292 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2871 lb</td>
<td>2859 lb</td>
<td>2848 lb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dump Clearance</td>
<td>2554 mm</td>
<td>2554 mm</td>
<td>2554 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>101 in</td>
<td>101 in</td>
<td>101 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>923 mm</td>
<td>923 mm</td>
<td>923 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36 in</td>
<td>36 in</td>
<td>36 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 3

#### General Purpose Buckets

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Models</th>
<th>P/N</th>
<th>279-5368</th>
<th>279-5372</th>
<th>279-5376</th>
<th>292-9271</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>221 kg</td>
<td>234 kg</td>
<td>247 kg</td>
<td>279 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>487 lb</td>
<td>516 lb</td>
<td>544 lb</td>
<td>614 lb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bucket</td>
<td>1676 mm</td>
<td>1829 mm</td>
<td>1981 mm</td>
<td>2134 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>66 in</td>
<td>72 in</td>
<td>78 in</td>
<td>mm High Capacity</td>
<td>84 High Capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>279C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1002 kg</td>
<td>998 kg</td>
<td>993 kg</td>
<td>962 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2210 lb</td>
<td>2201 lb</td>
<td>2190 lb</td>
<td>2122 lb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dump Clearance</td>
<td>2391 mm</td>
<td>2391 mm</td>
<td>2391 mm</td>
<td>2330 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>94 in</td>
<td>94 in</td>
<td>94 in</td>
<td>92 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>633 mm</td>
<td>633 mm</td>
<td>633 mm</td>
<td>703 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25 in</td>
<td>25 in</td>
<td>25 in</td>
<td>28 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>289C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1192 kg</td>
<td>1188 kg</td>
<td>1182 kg</td>
<td>1146 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2628 lb</td>
<td>2619 lb</td>
<td>2607 lb</td>
<td>2527 lb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dump Clearance</td>
<td>2502 mm</td>
<td>2502 mm</td>
<td>2502 mm</td>
<td>2440 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>99 in</td>
<td>99 in</td>
<td>99 in</td>
<td>96 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>948 mm</td>
<td>948 mm</td>
<td>948 mm</td>
<td>1018 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>37 in</td>
<td>37 in</td>
<td>37 in</td>
<td>40 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1288 kg</td>
<td>1284 kg</td>
<td>1279 kg</td>
<td>1240 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2840 lb</td>
<td>2831 lb</td>
<td>2819 lb</td>
<td>2734 lb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dump Clearance</td>
<td>2549 mm</td>
<td>2549 mm</td>
<td>2549 mm</td>
<td>2487 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 in</td>
<td>100 in</td>
<td>100 in</td>
<td>98 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>951 mm</td>
<td>951 mm</td>
<td>951 mm</td>
<td>1021 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>37 in</td>
<td>37 in</td>
<td>37 in</td>
<td>40 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 4  
**Multipurpose Buckets**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Models</th>
<th>P/N</th>
<th>279-5390 (Weight: 355 kg / 782 lb)</th>
<th>279-5398 (Weight: 374 kg / 824 lb)</th>
<th>279-5403 (Weight: 393 kg / 866 lb)</th>
<th>293-0139 (Weight: 393 kg / 866 lb)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>355 kg / 782 lb</td>
<td>374 kg / 824 lb</td>
<td>393 kg / 866 lb</td>
<td>393 kg / 866 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bucket</td>
<td>1676 mm / 66 in</td>
<td>1829 mm / 72 in</td>
<td>1981 mm / 78 in</td>
<td>2134 mm / 84 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>279C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>946 kg / 2086 lb</td>
<td>939 kg / 2071 lb</td>
<td>938 kg / 2068 lb</td>
<td>931 kg / 2054 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dump Clearance</td>
<td>2384 mm / 94 in</td>
<td>2384 mm / 94 in</td>
<td>2384 mm / 94 in</td>
<td>2384 mm / 94 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>636 mm / 25 in</td>
<td>636 mm / 25 in</td>
<td>636 mm / 25 in</td>
<td>636 mm / 25 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>289C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1132 kg / 2496 lb</td>
<td>1125 kg / 2481 lb</td>
<td>1125 kg / 2480 lb</td>
<td>1119 kg / 2467 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dump Clearance</td>
<td>2495 mm / 98 in</td>
<td>2495 mm / 98 in</td>
<td>2495 mm / 98 in</td>
<td>2495 mm / 98 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>951 mm / 37 in</td>
<td>951 mm / 37 in</td>
<td>951 mm / 37 in</td>
<td>951 mm / 37 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1227 kg / 2705 lb</td>
<td>1220 kg / 2690 lb</td>
<td>1220 kg / 2690 lb</td>
<td>1214 kg / 2676 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dump Clearance</td>
<td>2542 mm / 100 in</td>
<td>2542 mm / 100 in</td>
<td>2542 mm / 100 in</td>
<td>2542 mm / 100 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>954 mm / 38 in</td>
<td>954 mm / 38 in</td>
<td>954 mm / 38 in</td>
<td>954 mm / 38 in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 5  
**Multipurpose Buckets with Bolt On Edge and Debris Guard**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Models</th>
<th>P/N</th>
<th>325-7050 (Weight: 397 kg / 876 lb)</th>
<th>325-7060 (Weight: 421 kg / 928 lb)</th>
<th>325-7070 (Weight: 444 kg / 979 lb)</th>
<th>325-7080 (Weight: 468 kg / 1031 lb)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>397 kg / 876 lb</td>
<td>421 kg / 928 lb</td>
<td>444 kg / 979 lb</td>
<td>468 kg / 1031 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bucket</td>
<td>1676 mm / 66 in</td>
<td>1829 mm / 72 in</td>
<td>1981 mm / 78 in</td>
<td>2134 mm / 84 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>279C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>918 kg / 2024 lb</td>
<td>909 kg / 2004 lb</td>
<td>905 kg / 1995 lb</td>
<td>896 kg / 1976 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dump Clearance</td>
<td>2358 mm / 93 in</td>
<td>2358 mm / 93 in</td>
<td>2358 mm / 93 in</td>
<td>2358 mm / 93 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>651 mm / 26 in</td>
<td>651 mm / 26 in</td>
<td>651 mm / 26 in</td>
<td>651 mm / 26 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>289C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1100 kg / 2426 lb</td>
<td>1091 kg / 2406 lb</td>
<td>1088 kg / 2399 lb</td>
<td>1080 kg / 2381 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dump Clearance</td>
<td>2469 mm / 97 in</td>
<td>2469 mm / 97 in</td>
<td>2469 mm / 97 in</td>
<td>2469 mm / 97 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>965 mm / 38 in</td>
<td>965 mm / 38 in</td>
<td>965 mm / 38 in</td>
<td>965 mm / 38 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1195 kg / 2634 lb</td>
<td>1185 kg / 2613 lb</td>
<td>1182 kg / 2607 lb</td>
<td>1174 kg / 2589 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dump Clearance</td>
<td>2516 mm / 99 in</td>
<td>2516 mm / 99 in</td>
<td>2516 mm / 99 in</td>
<td>2516 mm / 99 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>968 mm / 38 in</td>
<td>968 mm / 38 in</td>
<td>968 mm / 38 in</td>
<td>968 mm / 38 in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 6

#### Utility Buckets

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Models</th>
<th>P/N</th>
<th>285-6099</th>
<th>285-6102</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>224 kg</td>
<td>494 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bucket</td>
<td>1676 mm</td>
<td>66 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>279C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1005 mm</td>
<td>2216 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dump Clearance</td>
<td>2366 mm</td>
<td>93 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>667 mm</td>
<td>26 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>289C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1195 kg</td>
<td>2636 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dump Clearance</td>
<td>2477 mm</td>
<td>98 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>982 mm</td>
<td>39 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1291 kg</td>
<td>2846 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dump Clearance</td>
<td>2524 mm</td>
<td>99 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>985 mm</td>
<td>39 in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 7

#### Light Material Buckets

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Models</th>
<th>P/N</th>
<th>279-5421</th>
<th>279-5424</th>
<th>279-5429 (Bolt On Edge)</th>
<th>296-7597 (Bolt On Edge)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>266 kg</td>
<td>587 lb</td>
<td>280 kg</td>
<td>618 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bucket</td>
<td>1829 mm</td>
<td>72 in</td>
<td>1981 mm</td>
<td>78 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>279C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1046 kg</td>
<td>2307 lb</td>
<td>1041 kg</td>
<td>2294 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dump Clearance</td>
<td>2335 mm</td>
<td>92 in</td>
<td>2335 mm</td>
<td>92 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>697 mm</td>
<td>27 in</td>
<td>697 mm</td>
<td>27 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>289C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1251 kg</td>
<td>2757 lb</td>
<td>1245 kg</td>
<td>2745 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dump Clearance</td>
<td>2445 mm</td>
<td>96 in</td>
<td>2445 mm</td>
<td>96 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>1012 mm</td>
<td>40 in</td>
<td>1012 mm</td>
<td>40 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1349 kg</td>
<td>2974 lb</td>
<td>1343 kg</td>
<td>2961 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dump Clearance</td>
<td>2492 mm</td>
<td>98 in</td>
<td>2492 mm</td>
<td>98 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>1015 mm</td>
<td>40 in</td>
<td>1015 mm</td>
<td>40 in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Models</th>
<th>P/N</th>
<th>157-7224</th>
<th>157-7225</th>
<th>217-6229</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>425 kg</td>
<td>440 kg</td>
<td>459 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>937 lb</td>
<td>970 lb</td>
<td>1012 lb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bucket</td>
<td>1676 mm</td>
<td>1829 mm</td>
<td>1981 mm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>66 in</td>
<td>72 in</td>
<td>78 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>279C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>985 kg</td>
<td>980 kg</td>
<td>974 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2172 lb</td>
<td>2161 lb</td>
<td>2147 lb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dump</td>
<td>2392 mm</td>
<td>2392 mm</td>
<td>2392 mm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearance</td>
<td>94 in</td>
<td>94 in</td>
<td>94 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>636 mm</td>
<td>636 mm</td>
<td>636 mm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25 in</td>
<td>25 in</td>
<td>25 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>289C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1187 kg</td>
<td>1182 kg</td>
<td>1176 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2617 lb</td>
<td>2606 lb</td>
<td>2592 lb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dump</td>
<td>2502 mm</td>
<td>2502 mm</td>
<td>2502 mm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearance</td>
<td>99 in</td>
<td>99 in</td>
<td>99 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>951 mm</td>
<td>951 mm</td>
<td>951 mm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>37 in</td>
<td>37 in</td>
<td>37 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1286 kg</td>
<td>1280 kg</td>
<td>1274 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2835 lb</td>
<td>2823 lb</td>
<td>2809 lb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dump</td>
<td>2550 mm</td>
<td>2550 mm</td>
<td>2550 mm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearance</td>
<td>100 in</td>
<td>100 in</td>
<td>100 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>954 mm</td>
<td>954 mm</td>
<td>954 mm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>38 in</td>
<td>38 in</td>
<td>38 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) The rated capacity is calculated with a full bucket of dirt. Grasping objects with the grapple will lower the rated capacity.

Table 9

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Models</th>
<th>P/N</th>
<th>285-6111</th>
<th>285-6110</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>363 kg</td>
<td>800 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>835 lb</td>
<td>379 kg</td>
<td>72 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bucket</td>
<td>1676 mm</td>
<td>1829 mm</td>
<td>25 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>66 in</td>
<td>72 in</td>
<td>27 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>279C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>951 kg</td>
<td>2098 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>946 kg</td>
<td>2085 lb</td>
<td>27 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dump</td>
<td>2336 mm</td>
<td>2336 mm</td>
<td>27 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearance</td>
<td>92 in</td>
<td>92 in</td>
<td>27 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>678 mm</td>
<td>678 mm</td>
<td>27 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>27 in</td>
<td>27 in</td>
<td>27 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>289C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1140 kg</td>
<td>1134 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1134 kg</td>
<td>2500 lb</td>
<td>27 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dump</td>
<td>2446 mm</td>
<td>2446 mm</td>
<td>96 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearance</td>
<td>96 in</td>
<td>96 in</td>
<td>96 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>993 mm</td>
<td>993 mm</td>
<td>993 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>39 in</td>
<td>39 in</td>
<td>39 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299C</td>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1235 kg</td>
<td>1230 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2711 lb</td>
<td>2711 lb</td>
<td>98 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dump</td>
<td>2493 mm</td>
<td>2493 mm</td>
<td>98 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearance</td>
<td>98 in</td>
<td>98 in</td>
<td>98 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>996 mm</td>
<td>996 mm</td>
<td>996 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>39 in</td>
<td>39 in</td>
<td>39 in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) The rated capacity is calculated with a full bucket of dirt. Grasping objects with the grapple will lower the rated capacity.

Rated Loads for Forks

Note: Rated loads should be used as a guide. Attachments, uneven ground conditions, soft ground conditions, or poor ground conditions have effects on rated loads. The operator is responsible for being aware of these effects.

The rated operating load is defined by “SAE J1197” (October 2002) and “EN474”. The rated operating load is the least amount of weight of the following conditions:

- 35% of the full static tipping load on a surface that is soft or a surface that is not level
- 50% of the full static tipping load on a surface that is hard and level
• The hydraulic lifting capacity

Illustration 17

Dimension (A) represents the maximum fork height. Dimension (B) represents the load center. Dimension (C) represents the reach. Dimension (D) represents the fork tine length.

The maximum fork height (ground to top face of fork) is given for a pallet fork that is horizontal at maximum lift height. The reach (front of the tracks to the front face of the fork) is given for a pallet fork that is horizontal maximum reach.

The following tables provide the Rated Operating Capacity (ROC) for the standard machine configuration that is equipped with the following items:

• Full fuel tank
• Lubricants
• 75 kg (165 lb) operator
• Caterpillar fork
### Table 10

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Models</th>
<th>P/N</th>
<th>293-9427</th>
<th>293-9428</th>
<th>293-9429</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>182 kg</td>
<td>401 lb</td>
<td>192 kg</td>
<td>423 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fork</td>
<td>914 mm</td>
<td>36 in</td>
<td>1067 mm</td>
<td>42 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load Center</td>
<td>455 mm</td>
<td>18 in</td>
<td>535 mm</td>
<td>21 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>863 kg</td>
<td>1902 lb</td>
<td>811 kg</td>
<td>1787 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Height of Fork</td>
<td>3025 mm</td>
<td>119 in</td>
<td>3025 mm</td>
<td>119 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>849 mm</td>
<td>33 in</td>
<td>849 mm</td>
<td>33 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1012 kg</td>
<td>2231 lb</td>
<td>948 kg</td>
<td>2091 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Height of Fork</td>
<td>3130 mm</td>
<td>123 in</td>
<td>3130 mm</td>
<td>123 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>743 mm</td>
<td>29 in</td>
<td>743 mm</td>
<td>29 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1093 kg</td>
<td>2411 lb</td>
<td>1026 kg</td>
<td>2263 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Height of Fork</td>
<td>3177 mm</td>
<td>125 in</td>
<td>3177 mm</td>
<td>125 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reach</td>
<td>730 mm</td>
<td>29 in</td>
<td>730 mm</td>
<td>29 in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 11

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Models</th>
<th>P/N</th>
<th>285-6105</th>
<th>285-6110</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>198 kg</td>
<td>436 lb</td>
<td>219 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fork</td>
<td>1676 mm</td>
<td>66 in</td>
<td>1829 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load Center</td>
<td>314 mm</td>
<td>12 in</td>
<td>314 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>986 kg</td>
<td>2174 lb</td>
<td>980 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1168 kg</td>
<td>2575 lb</td>
<td>1162 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1259 kg</td>
<td>2776 lb</td>
<td>1253 kg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 12

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Models</th>
<th>P/N</th>
<th>285-6114</th>
<th>285-6115</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>304 kg</td>
<td>671 lb</td>
<td>326 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fork</td>
<td>1676 mm</td>
<td>66 in</td>
<td>1829 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load Center</td>
<td>314 mm</td>
<td>12 in</td>
<td>314 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>988 kg</td>
<td>2179 lb</td>
<td>981 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1179 kg</td>
<td>2600 lb</td>
<td>1172 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td>1273 kg</td>
<td>2806 lb</td>
<td>1266 kg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 13

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Models</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Fork</th>
<th>Load Center</th>
<th>P/N</th>
<th>279-5350</th>
<th>279-5360</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kg</td>
<td>in</td>
<td>mm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>279C</td>
<td>502</td>
<td>1676</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>279-5350</td>
<td>1106</td>
<td>548</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>940</td>
<td>1829</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>279-5360</td>
<td>2072</td>
<td>925</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>289C</td>
<td>1134</td>
<td>1229</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>279-5350</td>
<td>2501</td>
<td>1121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1229</td>
<td>1215</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>279-5360</td>
<td>2709</td>
<td>1215</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Rated Load with a Material Handling Arm**

![Illustration 18]

**WARNING**

Failure to comply to the rated load can cause possible personal injury or property damage. Review the rated load of a particular work tool before performing any operation. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

*Note:* Rated loads should be used as a guide. Attachments, uneven ground conditions, soft ground conditions, or poor ground conditions have effects on rated loads. The operator is responsible for being aware of these effects.

The maximum placement height (ground line to the chain hook) is given for the highest position of the material handling arm. The maximum reach (front of the machine to the chain hook) is the maximum horizontal reach of the material handling arm.

The rated operating capacity is the least amount of weight of the following conditions:

- 35% of the full static tipping load on a surface that is soft or a surface that is uneven
- 50% of the full static tipping load on a surface that is hard and level
- The hydraulic lifting capacity
- The material handling arm has a structural capacity of 907 kg (2000 lb).

The following tables provide the Rated Operating Capacity (ROC) for the standard machine configuration that is equipped with the following items:

- Full fuel tank
- Lubricants
- 75 kg (165 lb) operator
- Caterpillar Material Handling Arm

Illustration 18
Lifting point 1 (1)
Lifting point 2 (2)
Dimension (A) represents the clearance at the full down position from Lifting Point 2. Dimension (a) represents the clearance at the full down position from Lifting Point 1. Dimension (B) represents the clearance at maximum height from Lifting Point 2. Dimension (b) represents the clearance at maximum height from Lifting Point 1. Dimension (C) represents the minimum reach from Lifting Point 2. Dimension (c) represents the minimum reach from Lifting Point 1. Dimension (D) represents the maximum reach from Lifting Point 2. Dimension (d) represents the maximum reach from Lifting Point 1.
Table 14

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Models</th>
<th>P/N</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>216-8756</th>
<th>289 lb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>131 kg</td>
<td></td>
<td>289 lb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>131 kg</td>
<td>289 lb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>651 kg</td>
<td>1435 lb</td>
<td>542 kg</td>
<td>1195 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearance at Full Down</td>
<td>-974 mm</td>
<td>-38 in</td>
<td>-1459 mm</td>
<td>-57 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearance at Maximum Height</td>
<td>4359 mm</td>
<td>172 in</td>
<td>4804 mm</td>
<td>189 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Reach</td>
<td>437 mm</td>
<td>17 in</td>
<td>285 mm</td>
<td>11 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Reach</td>
<td>1756 mm</td>
<td>69 in</td>
<td>2201 mm</td>
<td>87 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>757 kg</td>
<td>1669 lb</td>
<td>625 kg</td>
<td>1378 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearance at Full Down</td>
<td>-947 mm</td>
<td>-37 in</td>
<td>-1441 mm</td>
<td>-57 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearance at Maximum Height</td>
<td>4470 mm</td>
<td>176 in</td>
<td>4915 mm</td>
<td>194 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Reach</td>
<td>516 mm</td>
<td>20 in</td>
<td>398 mm</td>
<td>16 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Reach</td>
<td>1650 mm</td>
<td>65 in</td>
<td>2096 mm</td>
<td>83 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>862 kg</td>
<td>1901 lb</td>
<td>710 kg</td>
<td>1566 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R.O.C. 35%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearance at Full Down</td>
<td>-947 mm</td>
<td>-37 in</td>
<td>-1441 mm</td>
<td>-57 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearance at Maximum Height</td>
<td>4517 mm</td>
<td>178 in</td>
<td>4962 mm</td>
<td>195 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Reach</td>
<td>516 mm</td>
<td>20 in</td>
<td>398 mm</td>
<td>16 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Reach</td>
<td>1637 mm</td>
<td>64 in</td>
<td>2083 mm</td>
<td>82 in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Specifications

SMCS Code: 7000

Intended Use

This machine is classified as a Skid Steer Loader with wheels or tracks as described in "EN ISO 6165:2006". This machine normally has a front mounted bucket or another work tool for digging, loading, lifting, carrying and moving material such as earth, crushed rock or gravel. Additional work tools allow this machine to perform other specific tasks.

Application/Configuration Restrictions

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Machine Data" below for information about maximum machine weight.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Approved Work Tools" for information about acceptable work tools.

The maximum fore and aft slope for proper lubrication is 25 degrees continuous and 35 degrees intermittent. Intermittent time is 2 minutes.

Use this machine in environments with no explosive gases.

Diesel Fuel Requirements
In the United States, 0.0015 percent (15 ppm) sulfur diesel fuels have been used in most on-highway truck engines since 15 October 2006. This ultra low sulfur diesel fuel (ULSD) was mandated as a means of directly reducing particulate emissions from on-highway diesel engines. This ultra low sulfur fuel will also be used in Caterpillar commercial diesel engines and in Caterpillar machine engines. ULSD fuel will be used when low emissions are required.

**Note:** In Europe, ultra low sulfur diesel fuel will have a maximum of 0.0010 percent (10 ppm) sulfur and is typically referred to as “sulfur-free”.

---

**NOTICE**

Heavy Fuel Oil (HFO), Residual fuel, or Blended fuel must **NOT** be used in Caterpillar diesel engines (except in 3600 Series HFO engines). Blended fuel is residual fuel that has been diluted with a lighter fuel (cutter stock) so that they will flow. Blended fuels are also referred to as heavy fuel oils. Severe component wear and component failures will result if HFO type fuels are used in engines that are configured to use distillate fuel.

Low Sulfur Diesel (LSD) fuel will have ≤500 ppm (0.05%) sulfur. Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) fuel will have ≤15 ppm (0.0015%) sulfur using the “ASTM D5453”, “ASTM D2622”, or “ISO 20846, ISO 20884” test methods. Certain applications and/or governments/localities **MAY** require the use of ULSD fuel. Emission controlled diesel engines and/or diesel engines equipped with exhaust aftertreatment devices **MAY** require the use of ULSD fuel. Diesel engines equipped with a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) require the use of ULSD. Consult federal, state, and local authorities for guidance on fuel requirements for your area. Also, consult the specific engine Operation and Maintenance Manual for guidance.

There are many other diesel fuel specifications that are published by governments and by technological societies. Usually, those specifications do not review all the requirements that are addressed in the Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU6251, “Caterpillar Commercial Diesel Engine Fluids Recommendations” in the section “Caterpillar Specification for Distillate Diesel Fuel”. To ensure optimum engine performance, a complete fuel analysis should be obtained before engine operation.

---

**WARNING**

Mixing alcohol or gasoline with diesel fuel can produce an explosive mixture in the engine crankcase or fuel tank.

Personal injury and damage to the engine may result. Caterpillar recommends against this practice.

There are many different types of fuel additives that are available to use. Caterpillar does not generally recommend the use of fuel additives.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU6251, “Caterpillar Commercial Diesel Engine Fluids Recommendations” for the use of fuel additives and fuel conditioners.

**Machine Data**

The specifications that are given herein describe the machine as the machine is manufactured by Caterpillar Inc. The machine is full of fluids. The machine is equipped with all options. The weight does not include the operator, work tools, or other attachments.
### Table 15

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Machine</td>
<td>4533 kg (9994 lb)</td>
<td>4752 kg (10476 lb)</td>
<td>4871 kg (10739 lb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall Length</td>
<td>2951 mm (116 inch)</td>
<td>2951 mm (116 inch)</td>
<td>3092 mm (122 inch)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>2083 mm (82 inch)</td>
<td>2083 mm (82 inch)</td>
<td>2083 mm (82 inch)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Width</td>
<td>1981 mm (78 inch)</td>
<td>1981 mm (78 inch)</td>
<td>1981 mm (78 inch)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Identification Information

Plate Locations and Film Locations

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

The Product Identification Number (PIN) will be used to identify a powered machine that is designed for an operator to ride.

For quick reference, record the identification numbers in the spaces that are provided below the illustration.

Illustration 21
The Identification Plate for the machine is located under the lift arm on the left side.

(1) Machine PIN ________________________________

Year of Manufacture ____________________________

- PIN __________________________________________
- Model _________________________________________
- Power (kW) __________________________________
- Weight (kg) _________________________________

The engine serial number plate is located on the engine.

- Engine Serial Number _________________________

Illustration 22
This plate is located on the bottom left side of the Identification Plate.

Note: The CE plate is on machines that are certified to the European Union requirements that are listed on the “Document of Conformity”. If the machine is equipped with the plate for the European Union, the plate is attached to the PIN plates.

For machines that are compliant to “2006/42/EC”, the following information is stamped onto the CE plate. For quick reference, record this information in the spaces that are provided below.

- Year of Manufacture __________________________
- Engine Power for primary engine (kW) _________
- Engine Power for additional engine (if equipped) ________________________________
- Typical machine operating weight for European market (kg) __________________________
- Year of construction __________________________
- Machine Function ____________________________

For machines that are compliant with “98/37/EC” the following information is stamped on the CE plate. For quick reference, record this information in the spaces that are provided below.

- Engine Power for primary engine (kW) _________
- Typical machine operating weight for European market (kg) __________________________
- Year ________________________________________

For the name of the manufacturer, the address of the manufacturer, and the country of origin, refer to the PIN plate.
Emissions Certification Film

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000; 7405

Certification Label for Emissions

Note: This information is pertinent in the United States, in Canada, and in Europe.

Consult your Cat dealer for an Emission Control Warranty Statement.

This label is located on the engine valve cover.
## Declaration of Conformity

**SMCS Code:** 1000; 7000

An EC Declaration of Conformity document was provided with the machine if it was manufactured to comply with specific requirements for the European Union. In order to determine the details of the applicable Directives, review the complete EC Declaration of Conformity provided with the machine. The extract shown below from an EC Declaration of Conformity for machines that are declared compliant to “2006/42/EC” applies only to those machines originally “CE” marked by the manufacturer listed and which have not since been modified.

### EC DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY OF MACHINERY

**Manufacturer:** Caterpillar Inc., 100 N.E. Adams Street, Peoria, Illinois 61629, USA

**Person authorized to compile the Technical File and to communicate relevant part(s) of the Technical File to the Authorities of European Union Member States on request:** Standards & Regulations Manager, Caterpillar France S.A.S 40, Avenue Leon-Blum, B.P. 55, 38041 Grenoble Cedex 9, France

I, the undersigned, __________, hereby certify that the construction equipment specified hereunder fulfills all the relevant provisions of the following Directives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directives</th>
<th>Notified Body</th>
<th>Document No.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2006/42/EC</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000/14/EC amended by 2005/88/EC, Note (1)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2004/108/EC</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note (1) Annex - __________ Guaranteed Sound Power Level - ____dB (A)
Representative Equipment Type Sound Power Level - ____dB (A)
Engine Power per ____kW Rated engine speed - ____rpm
Technical Documentation accessible through person listed above authorized to compile the Technical File

Done at: ____________________________  
Date: ____________________________  
Name/Position: ____________________________

**Note:** The above information was correct as of September 2009, but may be subject to change, please refer to the individual declaration of conformity issued with the machine for exact details.
Declaration of Conformity

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Table 17

An EC Declaration of Conformity document was provided with the machine if it was manufactured to comply with specific requirements for the European Union. In order to determine the details of the applicable Directives, review the complete EC Declaration of Conformity provided with the machine. The extract shown below from an EC Declaration of Conformity for machines that are declared compliant to “2006/42/EC” applies only to those machines originally “CE” marked by the manufacturer listed and which have not since been modified.

EC DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY OF MACHINERY

Manufacturer:
Caterpillar Inc., 100 N.E. Adams Street, Peoria, Illinois 61629, USA

Person authorized to compile the Technical File and to communicate relevant part(s) of the Technical File to the Authorities of European Union Member States on request:
Standards & Regulations Manager, Caterpillar France S.A.S 40, Avenue Leon-Blum, B.P. 55, 38041 Grenoble Cedex 9, France

I, the undersigned, __________, hereby certify that the construction equipment specified hereunder

Description: Generic Denomination: Earth-moving Equipment
Function: Rake with Top Clamp
Model/Type: Industrial Grapple Rake
Serial Number:
Commercial Name: Caterpillar

Fulfills all the relevant provisions of the following Directives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directives</th>
<th>Notified Body</th>
<th>Document No.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2006/42/EC</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note (1) Technical Documentation accessible through person listed above authorized to compile the Technical File

Done at: 
Date: 
Signature 
Name/Position

Note: The above information was correct as of October 2009, but may be subject to change, please refer to the individual declaration of conformity issued with the machine for exact details.
Declaration of Conformity

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Table 18

An EC Declaration of Conformity document was provided with the machine if it was manufactured to comply with specific requirements for the European Union. In order to determine the details of the applicable Directives, review the complete EC Declaration of Conformity provided with the machine. The extract shown below from an EC Declaration of Conformity for machines that are declared compliant to “2006/42/EC” applies only to those machines originally “CE” marked by the manufacturer listed and which have not since been modified.

EC DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY OF MACHINERY

Manufacturer:
Caterpillar Inc., 100 N.E. Adams Street, Peoria, Illinois 61629, USA

Person authorized to compile the Technical File and to communicate relevant part (s) of the Technical File to the Authorities of European Union Member States on request:
Standards & Regulations Manager, Caterpillar France S.A.S 40, Avenue Leon-Blum, B.P. 55, 38041 Grenoble Cedex 9, France

I, the undersigned, __________, hereby certify that the construction equipment specified hereunder

Description: Generic Denomination: Earth-moving Equipment
Function: Bucket with Top Clamp
Model/Type: Industrial Gapple Bucket, Utility Grapple Bucket
Serial Number:
Commercial Name: Caterpillar

Fulfils all the relevant provisions of the following Directives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directives</th>
<th>Notified Body</th>
<th>Document No.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2006/42/EC</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note (1) Technical Documentation accessible through person listed above authorized to compile the Technical File

Done at: ____________________________
Date: ____________________________
Signature ____________________________
Name/Position ____________________________

Note: The above information was correct as of October 2009, but may be subject to change, please refer to the individual declaration of conformity issued with the machine for exact details.
Declaration of Conformity

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Table 19

An EC Declaration of Conformity document was provided with the machine if it was manufactured to comply with specific requirements for the European Union. In order to determine the details of the applicable Directives, review the complete EC Declaration of Conformity provided with the machine. The extract shown below from an EC Declaration of Conformity for machines that are declared compliant to “2006/42/EC” applies only to those machines originally “CE” marked by the manufacturer listed and which have not since been modified.

EC DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY OF MACHINERY

Manufacturer:
Caterpillar Inc., 100 N.E. Adams Street, Peoria, Illinois 61629, USA

Person authorized to compile the Technical File and to communicate relevant part(s) of the Technical File to the Authorities of European Union Member States on request:
Standards & Regulations Manager, Caterpillar France S.A.S 40, Avenue Leon-Blum, B.P. 55, 38041 Grenoble Cedex 9, France

I, the undersigned, __________, hereby certify that the construction equipment specified hereunder
Description: Generic Denomination: Earth-moving Equipment
Function: Fork with Top Clamp
Model/Type: Industrial Grapple Fork, Utility Grapple Fork
Serial Number:
Commercial Name: Caterpillar

Fulfils all the relevant provisions of the following Directives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directives</th>
<th>Notified Body</th>
<th>Document No.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2006/42/EC</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note (1) Technical Documentation accessible through person listed above authorized to compile the Technical File

Done at: ________________________________
Date: ____________________________
Signature ____________________________
Name/Position ____________________________

Note: The above information was correct as of October 2009, but may be subject to change, please refer to the individual declaration of conformity issued with the machine for exact details.
### Declaration of Conformity

**SMCS Code:** 1000; 7000

Table 20

An EC Declaration of Conformity document was provided with the machine if it was manufactured to comply with specific requirements for the European Union. In order to determine the details of the applicable Directives, review the complete EC Declaration of Conformity provided with the machine. The extract shown below from an EC Declaration of Conformity for machines that are declared compliant to “2006/42/EC” applies only to those machines originally “CE” marked by the manufacturer listed and which have not since been modified.

**EC DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY OF MACHINERY**

**Manufacturer:**
Caterpillar Inc., 100 N.E. Adams Street, Peoria, Illinois 61629, USA

**Person authorized to compile the Technical File and to communicate relevant part (s) of the Technical File to the Authorities of European Union Member States on request:**

Standards & Regulations Manager, Caterpillar France S.A.S 40, Avenue Leon-Blum, B.P. 55, 38041 Grenoble Cedex 9, France

I, the undersigned, __________, hereby certify that the construction equipment specified hereunder:

- **Description:**
- **Generic Denomination:** Earth-moving Equipment
- **Function:** Multipurpose Bucket
- **Model/Type:** Multipurpose (MP) Bucket
- **Serial Number:**
- **Commercial Name:** Caterpillar

Fulfils all the relevant provisions of the following Directives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directives</th>
<th>Notified Body</th>
<th>Document No.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2006/42/EC</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note (1) Technical Documentation accessible through person listed above authorized to compile the Technical File

Done at: ___________________________  Signature: ___________________________
Date: ___________________________  Name/Position: ___________________________

**Note:** The above information was correct as of October 2009, but may be subject to change, please refer to the individual declaration of conformity issued with the machine for exact details.
Declaration of Conformity

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Table 21

An EC Declaration of Conformity document was provided with the machine if it was manufactured to comply with specific requirements for the European Union. In order to determine the details of the applicable Directives, review the complete EC Declaration of Conformity provided with the machine. The extract shown below from an EC Declaration of Conformity for machines that are declared compliant to “2006/42/EC” applies only to those machines originally “CE” marked by the manufacturer listed and which have not since been modified.

EC DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY OF MACHINERY

Manufacturer:
Caterpillar Inc., 100 N.E. Adams Street, Peoria, Illinois 61629, USA

Person authorized to compile the Technical File and to communicate relevant part(s) of the Technical File to the Authorities of European Union Member States on request:
Standards & Regulations Manager, Caterpillar France S.A.S 40, Avenue Leon-Blum, B.P. 55, 38041 Grenoble Cedex 9, France

I, the undersigned, _________, hereby certify that the construction equipment specified hereunder

Description: Generic Denomination: Earth-moving Equipment
Function: Material Handling Arm
Model/Type: Material Handling Arm (MHA), Truss Boom, Lifting Hook
Serial Number:

Commercial Name: Caterpillar

Fulfils all the relevant provisions of the following Directives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directives</th>
<th>Notified Body</th>
<th>Document No.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2006/42/EC</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note (1) Technical Documentation accessible through person listed above authorized to compile the Technical File

Done at: _____________________________
Date: _____________________________

Signature
Name/Position

Note: The above information was correct as of October 2009, but may be subject to change, please refer to the individual declaration of conformity issued with the machine for exact details.
Operation Section

Before Operation

Mounting and Dismounting

SMCS Code: 7000

Mount the machine and dismount the machine only at locations that have steps and/or handholds. Before you mount the machine, clean the steps and the handholds. Inspect the steps and handholds. Make all necessary repairs.

Face the machine whenever you get on the machine and whenever you get off the machine.

Maintain a three-point contact with the steps and with the handholds.

Note: Three-point contact can be two feet and one hand. Three-point contact can also be one foot and two hands.

Do not mount a moving machine. Do not dismount a moving machine. Never jump off the machine. Do not carry tools or supplies when you try to mount the machine or when you try to dismount the machine. Use a hand line to pull equipment onto the platform. Do not use any controls as handholds when you enter the operator compartment or when you exit the operator compartment.

Daily Inspection

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

NOTICE

Accumulated grease and oil on a machine is a fire hazard. Remove this debris with steam cleaning or high pressure water, at least every 1000 hours or each time any significant quantity of oil is spilled on a machine.

For maximum service life of the machine, make a thorough daily inspection before you operate the machine. Remove any debris from the engine compartment and the undercarriage. Ensure that all guards, covers, and caps are secured. Inspect all hoses and belts for damage. Make the needed repairs before you operate the machine.

Inspect the area around the machine and under the machine. Look for loose bolts, trash buildup, oil, coolant, fuel, or exhaust leakage, broken parts, or worn parts.

Note: Watch closely for leaks. If you observe a leak, find the source of the leak and correct the leak. If you suspect a leak or you observe a leak, check the fluid levels more frequently.

Inspect the condition of the equipment and of the hydraulic components.

Check all of the oil levels, all of the coolant levels, and all of the fuel levels.

Remove any trash buildup and debris. Inspect the area between lift cylinder and lower plate of the lift tower for debris and clean as necessary. Inspect the rear portion of the right side lift cylinder tower for debris and clean as necessary.

Perform all necessary repairs before you operate the machine.

Ensure that all covers and guards are securely attached.

Adjust the mirrors for the correct rear view of the machine.

Grease all of the fittings that are scheduled on a daily basis.

Daily, perform the procedures that are applicable to your machine. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Maintenance Interval Schedule” “Every 10 Service Hours or Daily” category for the list of procedures.
Alternate Exit

SMCS Code: 7000

Primary Exit

The rear window in the machine serves as the primary alternate exit. The window will need to be removed in order to use the primary alternate exit. Pull on the ring at the top of the window in order to remove the window. This will remove the seal that holds the window in place. When the seal is taken out, carefully remove the window.

Secondary Exit

Illustration 25
(2) Release levers for the hinge
(3) Quick release for the strut
(4) Door Latch

Illustration 26

If necessary, the cab door may be removed from the hinges from the inside of the machine. Use the following procedure:

1. Release the door from the striker (4).

2. Use the two levers (2) in order to release the hinge. Move the upper lever counterclockwise. Move the lower lever clockwise.
3. Locate the quick release (3) on the end of the support strut. Move the quick release to the left and hold the quick release.

4. Push up on the strut in order to release the strut from the mount.

5. Push the door away from the cab.

**Seat Belt**

**SMCS Code:** 7327

**Note:** This machine was equipped with a seat belt when the machine was shipped from Caterpillar. At the time of installation, the seat belt and the instructions for installation of the seat belt meet the SAE J386 and ISO 6683 standards. Consult your Cat dealer for all replacement parts.

Always check the condition of the seat belt and the condition of the mounting hardware before you operate the machine.

**Seat Belt Adjustment for Non-Retractable Seat Belts**

Adjust both ends of the seat belt. The seat belt should be snug but comfortable.

**Lengthening the Seat Belt**

1. Unfasten the seat belt.

2. To remove the slack in outer loop (1), rotate buckle (2). This will free the lock bar. This permits the seat belt to move through the buckle.

3. Remove the slack from the outer belt loop by pulling on the buckle.

4. Loosen the other half of the seat belt in the same manner. If the seat belt does not fit snugly with the buckle in the center, readjust the seat belt.

**Shortening the Seat Belt**

1. Fasten the seat belt. Pull out on the outer belt loop in order to tighten the seat belt.

2. Adjust the other half of the seat belt in the same manner.

3. If the seat belt does not fit snugly with the buckle in the center, readjust the seat belt.
Fastening The Seat Belt

Fasten the seat belt catch (3) into the buckle (2). Make sure that the seat belt is placed low across the lap of the operator.

Releasing The Seat Belt

Pull up on the release lever. This will release the seat belt.

Seat Belt Adjustment for Retractable Seat Belts

Fastening The Seat Belt

Pull seat belt (4) out of the retractor in a continuous motion.

Fasten seat belt catch (3) into buckle (2). Make sure that the seat belt is placed low across the lap of the operator.

The retractor will adjust the belt length and the retractor will lock in place. The comfort ride sleeve will allow the operator to have limited movement.

Releasing The Seat Belt

Push the release button on the buckle in order to release the seat belt. The seat belt will automatically retract into the retractor.
Extension of the Seat Belt

**WARNING**

When using retractable seat belts, do not use seat belt extensions, or personal injury or death can result.

The retractor system may or may not lock up depending on the length of the extension and the size of the person. If the retractor does not lock up, the seat belt will not retain the person.

Longer, non-retractable seat belts and extensions for the non-retractable seat belts are available.

Caterpillar requires only non-retractable seat belts to be used with a seat belt extension.

Consult your Cat dealer for longer seat belts and for information on extending the seat belts.

Operator Controls

**SMCS Code:** 7300; 7451

Note: Your machine may not be equipped with all of the controls that are discussed in this topic.

The operation section is a reference for the new operator and a refresher for the experienced operator. This section includes descriptions of gauges, switches, machine controls, attachment controls, transportation, and towing information.

Illustrations guide the operator through correct procedures of checking, starting, operating, and stopping the machine. Operating techniques that are outlined in this publication are basic. Skill and techniques develop as the operator gains knowledge of the machine and the capabilities of the machine.

Note: Simple hydromechanical work tools may be shipped without hydraulic oil. Uneven movement may occur until all the air has been removed from the work tool. You may need to add hydraulic oil to the machine after the machine fills the circuits of the work tool. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check” for the proper procedure for checking the hydraulic oil level.

Note: If the machine is not equipped with a cab that is enclosed, Caterpillar recommends the use of a flying object guard. If the machine is equipped with an enclosed cab, operate the machine with the cab door in the CLOSED position.
Left Side Controls

Illustration 34

1. Auxiliary Hydraulic Pressure Release
2. Hydraulic Lockout and Interlock Override
3. Rear Work Lights
4. Front Work Lights
5. Multifunction Switch for the Left Hand Trigger
6. Auxiliary Electrical Control
7. Automatic Level Control
8. Work Tool Coupler Control
9. Fuel Level Gauge
10. Service Hour Meter
11. Joystick Control Pattern
12. Parking Brake
13. Engine Start Switch
14. 12 volt Plug
15. Window Wiper and Window Washer
16. Alert Indicator Panel

**Auxiliary Hydraulic Pressure Release (1)**

**WARNING**

Personal injury or death can result from the work tool falling.

Fully lower the loader arms before you release the hydraulic system pressure.

**Auxiliary Hydraulic Pressure Release** – After the engine has run in order to charge the accumulator, turn the ignition switch to the OFF position. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position. Release the parking brake. Push up on the locking tab and press the bottom of the switch in order to release the pressure in the Standard Flow Auxiliary Circuit and the High Flow Auxiliary Circuit. Hold the switch for 4 to 5 seconds and release the switch.
**Note:** The operator must remain in the seat with the armrests in the LOWERED position in order for the control to function. If equipped, the front door must be closed.

**Note:** The pressure in the secondary circuit is not affected by this switch. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Work Tool Coupler Operation : Secondary Auxiliary Circuit" for the procedure to release the pressure.

### Hydraulic Lockout and Interlock Override (2)

**Hydraulic Lockout** – Press the top of the switch in order to disable the hydraulic functions. Return the switch to the middle position in order to activate the hydraulic functions.

**Interlock Override** – The interlock override allows the auxiliary hydraulic circuits to function with the armrests in the RAISED position. First bring the machine to a complete stop. Activate the continuous flow control that is located on the left side joystick. Refer to the section “Joystick Controls” for detailed information. Press the bottom of the interlock override switch and release the switch in order to activate the interlock override function. In order to turn off the interlock override and continuous flow, press the bottom of the switch and release the switch again.

---

**WARNING**

Inadvertent movement of the work tool may occur if the interlock override function is used with work tools. This may result in personal injury or death. Only use interlock override function for hand-held work tools.

**Note:** The alert indicator for the parking brake will light when the interlock override is activated. When the interlock override is deactivated, press the parking brake switch in order to disengage the parking brake and activate the hydraulic functions.

---

**NOTICE**

Do not leave the machine unattended while you have the interlock override function activated.

### Switch on the Cab Door

A switch is provided on the cab door that prevents the work tool from operating when the cab door is open. If the cab door is not installed, install a jumper wire between Terminal 2 and Terminal 4 in the wiring harness connector for the Window Wiper. Refer to Special Instruction, REHS1738, "Installing the Cab Door and Mounting Group" for more information about the cab door.

**Note:** When the door is installed, remove the jumper wire from the connector plug before you connect the harness. Damage to the door could occur if the jumper is left in place.

### Rear Work Lights (3)

**Rear Work Lights** – Press the bottom of the switch in order to turn on the lights. Press the top of the switch in order to turn off the lights.

### Front Work Lights (4)

**Front Work Lights** – Press the bottom of the switch in order to turn on the lights. Press the top of the switch in order to turn off the lights.

### Multifunction Switch for the Left Hand Trigger (5)

This switch is used to toggle the function of the trigger on the left-hand joystick between Two Speed and the Auxiliary Electrical Function "AUX 7".

### Two Speed

**Two Speed** – Push the top of the switch in order to use the trigger for the two speed control. Press the trigger and release the trigger on the front of the left-hand joystick in order to activate rabbit mode. In order to return to single speed, press the trigger and release the trigger again.

**Note:** Keep the work tool close to the ground when you travel in rabbit mode. This method will maximize the stability of the machine.

**Note:** Do not move the multifunction switch while the Two Speed function is active. Ensure that the machine is in single speed mode before the Auxiliary Electrical Function "AUX 7" is activated.
**Note:** The creeper must be turned off in order to shift the machine into two speed. If you activate the creeper, the machine will return to single speed. If you set the parking brake, the machine will return to low speed.

**Auxiliary Electrical Function “AUX 7”**

**Note:** If the switch is not present, the trigger on the left-hand joystick only provides this auxiliary function.

- **Auxiliary Electrical Function “AUX 7”**
  - Push the bottom of the switch in order to activate the seventh auxiliary electrical function. Pull the trigger and hold the trigger on the left-hand joystick in order to provide electrical power to pin (B) on the work tool connector on the loader arm. Release the trigger in order to deactivate the control.

**Auxiliary Electrical Control “AUX 8”**

- **Auxiliary Electrical Control “AUX 8”**
  - The auxiliary electrical control supplies continuous electrical power to pin (H) on the connector for the work tool on the loader arm. Press on the bottom of the switch in order to turn on electrical power. Press on the top of the switch in order to turn off electrical power.

**Automatic Level Control (7)**

- **Automatic Level Control**
  - The Automatic Level Control maintains the approximate selected angle of the work tool as the loader lift arms are raised. Press on the bottom of the switch in order to activate the automatic level control. Press on the top of the switch in order to deactivate the automatic level control.

**Work Tool Coupler Control (8)**

- **Work Tool Coupler Control**
  - The work tool coupler control controls the engagement of the coupler pins.
    - **Disengaged**
      - Push the red button upward and press the bottom of the switch. Hold the switch in the downward position until the coupler pins disengage.
    - **Engaged**
      - Press the top of the switch and hold the top of the switch until the coupler pins engage.

**Fuel Level Gauge (9)**

- **Fuel Level Gauge**
  - The needle in the red range indicates low fuel.

**Service Hour Meter (10)**

- **Service Hour Meter**
  - The service hour meter should be used to determine service hour maintenance intervals.
Joystick Control Pattern (11)
The switch for the Joystick Control Pattern has a number “1” on one side and a number “2” on the other side. When you start the machine, choose “1 - Caterpillar” or “2 - Alternate” in order to release the parking brake. The numbers on the Alert Indicator panel will blink until a pattern is selected. Once a pattern has been selected, activating the parking brake will not affect the selection of the pattern. Refer to the section “Joystick Controls” for detailed information.

Parking Brake Control (12)

Parking Brake Control – Press on the right side of the switch and release the switch in order to engage the parking brake. The same operation will disengage the parking brake.

Note: The parking brake will engage when the engine is stopped. The parking brake will engage when the armrests are moved to the RAISED position. The parking brake will engage when the operator leaves the operator seat for a time. The parking brake will engage when the interlock override is activated.

Note: If the switch for the Joystick Control Pattern is installed, select a pattern in order to release the parking brake.

Engine Start Switch (13)

OFF – Insert the engine start switch key only from the OFF position and remove the engine start switch key only from the OFF position. Turn the engine start switch key to the OFF position in order to stop the engine. In the OFF position, there is no power to most electrical circuits on the machine. The cab dome light is operational even when the engine start switch is in the OFF position.

ON – Turn the engine start switch key clockwise to the ON position in order to activate all of the cab circuits.

START – Turn the engine start switch key clockwise to the START position in order to crank the engine. Release the engine start switch key after the engine starts and the engine start switch key returns to the ON position.

Note: If the engine fails to start, the turn the engine start switch key to the OFF position in order to attempt to start the engine again. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Engine Starting” for more details about starting the engine.

Window Wiper and Window Washer (15)

Window Wiper and Window Washer – Move the switch to the middle position in order to turn on the wiper. Press on the top of the switch in order to operate the washer. Press on the bottom of the switch in order to turn off the wipers.

Alert Indicator Panel (16)

Refer to the section Operator and Maintenance Manual, “Alert Indicators” for a description about the indicators.
Right Side Controls

(17) Coolant Temperature
Coolant Temperature gauge

(18) Hydraulic Oil Temperature
Hydraulic Oil Temperature gauge

(19) Digital Display Window
Refer to the section “Digital Display Window” for detailed information.

(20) Beacon Switch
Beacon – Press on the left side of the switch in order to turn on the beacon. Press the right side of the switch in order to turn off the beacon. The receptacle for the beacon is located on the upper left corner on the rear of the cab.

(21) Hazard Flashers
Hazard Flasher Control – Press on the left side of the switch in order to activate the hazard flashers. Press on the right side of the switch in order to deactivate the hazard flashers.

(22) Roading Lights
(23) Turn Signals
(24) Creeper Control
(25) Ride Control
(26) Fan Speed Control
(27) Air Conditioning Control
(28) Temperature Control
Roading Lights (22)

Roading Lights – Move the switch to the middle position in order to turn on the control panel lights and position lights. Press on the left side of the switch in order to turn on the front low beams. Press on the right side of the switch in order to turn off the lights.

Turn Signals (23)

Turn Signals – Press on the left side of the switch in order to turn on the left turn signals. Press on the right side of the switch in order to turn on the right turn signals. Move the switch to the middle position in order to turn off the turn signals.

Creeper Control (24)

The Creeper Control allows the operator to select a maximum machine travel speed at full joystick movement. Use creeper control for operations that require slow, constant speed.

Creeper Control – In order to activate the creeper control, stop the machine and return the joysticks to the neutral position. Press the bottom of the switch in order to turn on the creeper control. In order to deactivate the creeper control, stop the machine and return the joysticks to the neutral position. Press the top of the switch in order to turn off the creeper control.

Refer to “Digital Display Window” for detailed information about the creeper speed control.

Ride Control (25)

Ride Control assists in smoothing the ride of the machine. Travel over rough terrain causes bucket movement. The ride control system uses the lift cylinders as shock absorbers. The lift cylinders dampen the forces from the bucket.

Ride Control – Press the bottom of the switch in order to turn on the ride control. Ride control will activate and the alert indicator will illuminate at the appropriate speed. Press the top of the switch in order to turn off the ride control.

Note: The ride control will deactivate and the indicator will not be illuminated at the appropriate speed. The ride control will also deactivate if the tilt function for the work tool is operated.

The following approximate speeds apply:

- Activation speed - 8 km/h (5.0 mph) for Ride Control
- Deactivation speed - 6 km/h (3.7 mph) for Ride Control.

Note: If Automatic Level Control and Ride Control is selected, Ride Control will be activated at the Activation Speed and the Automatic Level Control will be deactivated. When the machine reaches the Deactivation speed, the Ride Control will be deactivated and the Automatic Level Control will be activated.

Fan Speed Control (26)

Fan Speed Control

Air Conditioner Control (27)

Air Conditioner Control

Temperature Control (28)

Temperature Control
Digital Display Window

The digital display window (29) shows some basic information about the machine. The Engine Speed, System Voltage, Job Clock, Work tool Control, “Drive Mode Control”, and Creeper Control are displayed. The digital display window is used to set the work tool control. The digital display window is used to set the Creeper Control. The Function Selector (32) is used to toggle between modes that are available:

- Operator Mode 1 - Display Screen
- Operator Mode 2 - Work Tool Control
- Operator Mode 3 - Drive Mode Control
- Operator Mode 4 - Creeper Control

The scroll up key (30) and the scroll down key (31) are used to toggle between screens or settings in a mode.

In order to display the AccuGrade menu, press the scroll down key (31) and press the function key (32) at the same time. Refer to the AccuGrade section below.

Operator Mode 1 - Display Screen

Three displays are available in this mode: Digital Tachometer, System Voltage, and Job Clock.

Illustration 38
Representation of the Digital Tachometer (default start-up mode)

Illustration 39
Representation of the System Voltage

Illustration 40
Representation of the Job Clock
The default start-up mode is the Digital Tachometer. Use the "Scroll Up" button and the "Scroll Down" button in order to change the screen. The Job Clock can be reset by holding the "Scroll Up" and the "Scroll Down" buttons for 3 seconds.

**Operator Mode 2 - Work Tool Control**

In Operator Mode 1, push the "Function Selector" button 1 time. The "Work Tool Control" screen is used in order to display the current setting for the response of the lift and tilt functions of the machine. Use the "Scroll Up" button and the "Scroll Down" button in order to change to a different setting.

The Work Tool Control mode has three settings:
- Fine Control - 1 Bar
- Medium Control - 2 Bars
- Coarse Control - 3 Bars

**Note:** The Work Tool Control setting will not change when the ignition switch is turned off.

**Operator Mode 3 - Drive**

In Operator Mode 1, push the "Function Selector" button 2 times. The "Drive Mode Control" screen is used in order to display the current setting of the "Drive Mode Control" functions. Use the "Scroll Up" button and the "Scroll Down" button in order to change to a different setting.

The "Drive Mode Control" has three settings:
- Standard Mode - 1 Bar
- Intermediate Mode - 2 Bars
- Maximum Mode - 3 Bars

**Note:** The "Drive Mode Control" setting will not change when the ignition switch is turned off.

**Note:** The machine will start, stop, and steer more aggressively with each progressive drive control mode. Test drive the machine in an open area in order to test the operating characteristics of the machine.

**Operator Mode 4 - Creeper Control**

In Operator Mode 1, push the "Function Selector" button 3 times. The "Creeper Control" screen is used in order to display the current setting for the creeper control. Use the "Scroll Up" button and the "Scroll Down" button in order to change to a different setting for the Creeper Control.

**Note:** The "Creeper Control" setting will not change when the ignition switch is turned off. Refer to the section "Creeper Control" for operation of the switch.
The Creeper Control has the following ten settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Approximate Percent of Full Speed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>13%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>17%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>24%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>37%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>57%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>80%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Setting 10** – The “MAX” icon will appear at the maximum setting.

### AccuGrade (If Equipped)

The following instructions are a quick reference for the AccuGrade. For detailed instructions for the AccuGrade, refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU8278.

1. Ensure that the Laser Receiver is attached to the work tool and attached to the machine properly.

2. In order to display the AccuGrade menu, press the scroll down key (31) and press function key (32) at the same time.

3. In order to set the benchmark, press the scroll up key (30) and press the scroll down key (31) at the same time. Hold the keys until the value is set in the computer (approximately 3 seconds). The screen will display a “0” and the screen will flash once.

4. Press the trigger and release the trigger on the right-hand joystick in order to enable the AccuGrade automatic controls. Operate the implement joystick or operate the thumb wheel in order to override the automatic controls temporarily.

5. Press the trigger and release the trigger on the right-hand joystick in order to disable the AccuGrade automatic controls.

6. Press the scroll up key (30) and hold the scroll up key in order to exit AccuGrade.

### Other Features in the Cab

#### Cab Dome Light

**Cab Dome Light** – Press on either side of the light in order to turn on the light. Move the light to the middle position in order to turn off the light.

#### Interlock Control

**Interlock Control** – Move the armrests to the RAISED position in order to lock out the hydraulic controls.
**Note:** When the armrests are moved to the RAISED position, the parking brake will engage. Move the armrests to the LOWERED position and push the switch for the parking brake in order to activate the hydraulic controls.

**Note:** When you start the engine, the parking brake must be disengaged in order for the hydraulic controls to be activated. If the armrests are raised and lowered during operation, disengage the parking brake in order for the hydraulic controls to be activated.

**Accelerator Control**

![Accelerator Control](Illustration 45)

Accelerator Control – Push down on the accelerator pedal in order to increase engine speed. Release the accelerator pedal in order to decrease engine speed. The accelerator pedal will return to the setting of the governor control.

**Standard Seat**

![Standard Seat](Illustration 46)

Illustration 46  
(35) Fore/Aft Adjustment

**Suspension Seat**

![Suspension Seat](Illustration 47)

Illustration 47  
(35) Fore/Aft Adjustment  
(37) Adjustment for the suspension

**Fore/Aft lever (35)** – Move the lever in order to adjust the seat.
Height (37) – Turn the knob in order to adjust the suspension of the seat. Turn the knob clockwise for a heavier person. Turn the knob counterclockwise for a lighter person.

Air Suspension Seat

Push in the knob (36) in order to increase the stiffness of the suspension. Pull the knob in order to decrease the stiffness of the suspension.

Note: The engine start switch key must be in the ON position in order to increase the stiffness of the seat.

Governor Control

Use the governor control when you want to set a constant engine speed. Move the lever upward in order to increase engine speed. Move the lever downward in order to decrease engine speed.

Joystick Controls

The joystick control that is described in this section is for the Caterpillar Joystick Control Pattern. This pattern is the default for machines that are NOT equipped with the option for the Selectable Control Pattern or the Dedicated Control Pattern.

Refer to the section “Selectable Control Pattern and Dedicated Control Pattern” below for instructions about the Alternate Joystick Control pattern and the Dedicated Control Pattern.

Refer to the section “Auxiliary Hydraulic Controls” below for instructions about the Auxiliary Hydraulic Controls.

Your machine may not be equipped with all of the controls that are discussed in this topic.
**Left Hand Joystick**

**Forward**

- **Forward Travel** – Push the joystick forward in order to travel forward.

**Backward**

- **Backward Travel** – Pull back on the joystick in order to travel in reverse.

**Right Turn**

- **Right Turn** – Move the joystick to the right in order to turn the machine to the right.

**Left Turn**

- **Left Turn** – Move the joystick to the left in order to turn the machine to the left.

**Horn**

- **Horn** – Press the switch in order to sound the horn. Use the horn in order to alert personnel.

**Two Speed Control**

- **Two Speed** – Press the trigger and release the trigger on the front of the left-hand joystick in order to activate rabbit mode. In order to activate rabbit mode, the Multifunction Switch must also be in the Two Speed position. Refer to “Multifunction Switch for the Left Hand Trigger (5)” above for instructions about the switch.

**Note:** Keep the work tool close to the ground when you travel in rabbit mode. This method will maximize the stability of the machine.

**Continuous Flow Control**

- **Continuous Flow** – The continuous flow control supplies continuous flow of hydraulic fluid to the auxiliary hydraulic circuit without continuously holding the auxiliary hydraulic control. Press either one of the two auxiliary hydraulic switches (1) or (2) that are located on the right side joystick and hold that switch. If equipped, you may also move the thumb wheel on the right side joystick and hold the thumb wheel. Press the continuous flow switch on the left-hand joystick and release the continuous flow switch. Immediately release the auxiliary hydraulic switch or the thumb wheel after you release the continuous flow switch. The continuous flow function will be activated if the operator releases the auxiliary hydraulic switch within one second of pressing the continuous flow switch. Press on either the auxiliary hydraulic control or the continuous flow switch in order to stop the flow to the auxiliary circuit.
Right Hand Joystick

Illustration 51  g01259303
Instruction Decal for the Right Hand Joystick

Lower

**Lower** – Push the joystick forward in order to lower the work tool.

Dump

**Dump** – Move the joystick to the right in order to tilt the work tool downward.

Raise

**Raise** – Pull the joystick backward in order to raise the work tool.

Tilt Back

**Tilt Back** – Move the joystick to the left in order to tilt the work tool upward.

Float

**Float** – Float allows the work tool to follow the contour of the ground.

The following conditions will activate the float function on the machine:

Move the joystick to the lower position and press the trigger. Float is activated. You may now release the trigger.

For an earlier machine that is not updated, move the joystick to the lower position. Press the trigger and release the trigger. Float is activated.

Once the float function is engaged, the joystick can be returned to the neutral position without affecting the float function. Float will remain engaged until the trigger on the right-hand joystick is pressed again. The float function will disengage also when the bucket is raised or when the bucket is lowered.

**Note:** These changes affect the following serial numbers: (S/N: JAY3086-UP), (S/N: DWS1377-UP), (S/N: MST2570-UP), (S/N: RED1669-UP), (S/N: JWF2014-UP), (S/N: MAS1735-UP), (S/N: GCP1475-UP), (S/N: MBT326-UP), (S/N: JSP289-UP), and (S/N: JMP309-UP). Serial numbers earlier than the listed will be affected if the software for the machine control has been updated.

**Note:** If the float function is enabled, the AccuGrade option is disabled.

Auxiliary Shake Out Mode

Auxiliary Shake Out mode is an aggressive movement of the work tool in order to dislodge effectively wet material or sticky material.

Move the thumb wheel over the NEUTRAL position three times within a 2 second period in order to activate Auxiliary Shake Out mode. Auxiliary Shake Out mode will remain engaged while the thumb wheel is moved back and forth over the NEUTRAL position. Normal auxiliary control mode will return when the movement of the thumb wheel is discontinued.

Selectable Control Pattern and Dedicated Control Pattern

If your machine is equipped with a Selectable Control Pattern or the Dedicated Control Pattern, there are two options for the joystick control:
• The alert indicator “1” will light when the Caterpillar Joystick Control Pattern is activated. Refer to the section “Joystick Controls” above for instructions about the Caterpillar Joystick Control Pattern in illustration 52 and in illustration 53 with the label “1”.

• The alert indicator “2” will light when the Alternate Joystick Control Pattern is activated.

The following instructions reflect the operation of the joysticks when the Alternate Joystick Control Pattern is selected. The Alternate Joystick Control Pattern changes the control of the work tool and the movement of the machine. The changes in the control are indicated in illustration 52 and in illustration 53 with the label “2”.

Refer to the section “Auxiliary Hydraulic Controls” below for instructions about the Auxiliary Hydraulic Controls.

Left Hand Joystick

Push both joysticks forward equally in order to move the machine in a straight line.

Reverse Drive

Reverse – Pull the left-hand joystick backward in order to move the left side of the machine backward.

Pull both joysticks backward equally in order to move the machine backward in a straight line.

Right Turn

Push the left joystick forward in order to turn the machine to the right.

Push the left joystick forward and pull the right joystick backward in order to turn the machine rapidly to the right.

Horn

Horn – Press the switch in order to sound the horn. Use the horn in order to alert personnel.

Two Speed Control

Two Speed – Press the trigger and release the trigger on the front of the left-hand joystick in order to activate rabbit mode. In order to activate rabbit mode, the Multifunction Switch must also be in the Two Speed position. Refer to “Multifunction Switch for the Left Hand Trigger (5)” above for instructions about the switch.

Note: Keep the work tool close to the ground when you travel in rabbit mode. This method will maximize the stability of the machine.

Lower

Lower – Move the joystick to the right in order to lower the work tool.

Raise

Raise – Move the joystick to the left in order to raise the work tool.

Forward Drive

Forward – Push the left-hand joystick forward in order to move the left side of the machine forward.
Continuous Flow Control

**Continuous Flow** – The continuous flow control supplies continuous flow of hydraulic fluid to the auxiliary hydraulic circuit without continuously holding the auxiliary hydraulic control. Press either one of the two auxiliary hydraulic switches (1) or (2) that are located on the right side joystick and hold that switch. If equipped, you may also move the thumb wheel on the right side joystick and hold the thumb wheel. Press the continuous flow switch on the left-hand joystick and release the continuous flow switch. Immediately release the auxiliary hydraulic switch or the thumb wheel after you release the continuous flow switch. The continuous flow function will be activated if the operator releases the auxiliary hydraulic switch within one second of pressing the continuous flow switch. Press on either the auxiliary hydraulic control or the continuous flow switch in order to stop the flow to the auxiliary circuit.

Right Hand Joystick

**Forward Drive**

- **Forward** – Push the right-hand joystick forward in order to move the right side of the machine forward.

Push both joysticks forward equally in order to move the machine forward in a straight line.

**Reverse Drive**

- **Reverse** – Pull the right-hand joystick backward in order to move the right side of the machine backward.

Pull both joysticks backward equally in order to move the machine backward in a straight line.

**Left Turn**

- Push the right joystick forward in order to turn the machine to the left.

Push the right joystick forward and pull the left joystick backward in order to turn the machine rapidly to the left.

**Dump**

- **Dump** – Move the joystick to the right in order to tilt the work tool downward.

**Tilt Back**

- **Tilt Back** – Move the joystick to the left in order to tilt the work tool upward.

**Float**

- **Float** – Float allows the work tool to follow the contour of the ground.

The following conditions will activate the float function on the machine.

Move the joystick to the lower position and press the trigger on the right-hand joystick. Float is activated. You may now release the trigger.

For an earlier machine that is not updated, move the joystick to the lower position. Press the trigger and release the trigger. Float is activated.

Once the float function is engaged, the joystick can be returned to the neutral position without affecting the float function. Float will remain engaged until the trigger on the right-hand joystick is pressed again. The float function will disengage also when the bucket is raised or when the bucket is lowered.
Note: These changes affect the following serial numbers: (S/N: JAY3086-UP), (S/N: DWS1377-UP), (S/N: MST2570-UP), (S/N: RED1669-UP), (S/N: JWF2014-UP), (S/N: MAS1735-UP), (S/N: GCP1475-UP), (S/N: MBT326-UP), (S/N: JSP289-UP), and (S/N: JMP309-UP). Serial numbers earlier than the listed will be affected if the software for the machine control has been updated.

Note: If the float function is enabled, the AccuGrade option is disabled.

**Auxiliary Hydraulic Controls**

If the work tool has a wiring harness, connect the work tool harness to the electrical plug on the loader arm. If your High Flow work tool does not have a wiring harness, a Jumper Plug should be installed on the electrical plug for the work tool control. Without this Jumper Plug, the machine will not provide High Flow to the work tool. Refer to your Parts Manual for the current part number for the Jumper Plug.


Note: If the high flow work tool does not have a wiring harness, consult the Operation and Maintenance Manual for the work tool for the proper instructions for attaching the work tool.

**Auxiliary Hydraulic Control (A1)** – This control provides hydraulic oil flow to the auxiliary connections on the loader arm. Engage the control in order to provide hydraulic oil flow to the connector (K). For high flow work tools, engage the control in order to provide hydraulic oil flow to the connector (K1).

**Auxiliary Hydraulic Control (A2)** – This control provides hydraulic oil flow to the auxiliary connections on the loader arm. Engage the control in order to provide hydraulic oil flow to the connector (J). For high flow work tools, engage the control in order to provide hydraulic oil flow to the connector (J1).

**Secondary Auxiliary Hydraulic Control (C-)** – This control provides hydraulic oil flow to the auxiliary connections on the loader arm. Press the control in order to provide hydraulic oil flow to the connector (M).

**Secondary Auxiliary Hydraulic Control (C+)** – This control provides hydraulic oil flow to the auxiliary connections on the loader arm. Press the control in order to provide hydraulic oil flow to the connector (L).
Auxiliary Electrical Control (E)

Typical electrical connection on the loading arm

**Auxiliary Electrical Control “AUX 5” (C2)** – This control provides electrical power in order to control a three-position diverter valve that is located on some work tools. Press the switch and hold the switch on the left-hand joystick in order to provide electrical power to the pin (D). Release the switch in order to deactivate the control.

**Auxiliary Electrical Control “AUX 6” (C1)** – This control provides electrical power in order to control a three-position diverter valve that is located on some work tools. Press the switch and hold the switch on the left-hand joystick in order to provide electrical power to the pin (C). Release the switch in order to deactivate the control.

**Auxiliary Electrical Control “AUX 7”** – Press the left hand trigger and hold the trigger in order to provide electrical power to the pin (B). Release the trigger in order to deactivate the control. Refer to “Multifunction Switch for the Left Hand Trigger (5)” above for instructions about the switch.

**Alert Indicators**

**SMCS Code:** 7450; 7451

The alert indicators are located on the left side overhead console.

**Note:** Your machine may not be equipped with all of the indicators that are discussed in this topic.
1 – Driver Alert
2 – Alternator Output
3 – Parking Brake
4 – Seat Belt
5 – High Flow
6 – Continuous Flow
7 – Work Tool System
   • RED Work Tool Lockout
   • AMBER Interlock Override
8 – Hydraulics
   • RED Hydraulic Temperature
   • AMBER Hydraulic Filter Bypass
9 – Glow Plug Starting Aid
10 – Engine Condition Indicator
    • RED Coolant Temperature
11 – MSS Indicator
12 – Two Speed Control
13 – Creeper Control
14 – Ride Control
15 – Caterpillar Joystick Control Pattern
16 – Alternate Joystick Control Pattern

**1 - Driver Alert** This alert indicator will activate when there is a problem which requires the operator's attention.

**Note:** Other alert indicators that light or the gauges may help investigate the cause of any problems.

There are three levels of severity for the indicator:

- **Level 1** - If the alert indicator is on continuously, stop the machine at the earliest convenience. Investigate the cause. If no additional alert indicators are illuminated, contact your Caterpillar dealer or refer to the service manual.
• Level 2 - If the alert indicator is flashing and there is no audible alarm, severe component damage could occur. Change your operation or perform the indicated maintenance.

• Level 3 - If the alert indicator is flashing and there is an audible alarm, injury to the operator or severe component damage could occur. Stop the machine immediately and stop the engine.

2 - Alternator Output This alert indicator will light if there is a malfunction in the electrical system. If this alert indicator comes on, the system voltage is too high for normal machine operation or too low for normal machine operation.

If electrical loads are high and the engine speed is near low idle, increase the engine speed to high idle. This will generate more output from the alternator. If the alert indicator for the electrical system turns off within one minute, the electrical system is probably operating in a normal manner. However, the electrical system may be overloaded during periods of low engine speeds.

Increase the engine idle speed with the governor lever in order to compensate for a higher electrical load on the system.

If this procedure does not cause the alert indicator to turn off, move to a convenient location. Investigate the cause (loose alternator belt, broken alternator belt, faulty batteries, etc).

3 - Parking Brake This alert indicator will light when the parking brake is engaged. The alert indicator should come on during start-up. The alert indicator should go out when the parking brake is disengaged.

4 - Seat Belt and Armrests This alert indicator will light when the armrests are in the RAISED position. The alert indicator will light when the operator gets out of the operator seat. The alert indicator should go out when the operator is in the operator seat and the armrests are in the LOWERED position.

5 - Hydraulic High Flow This alert indicator will light when the high flow hydraulic system is activated.

Note: The thumb wheel on the joystick must be fully displaced in order to activate the high flow hydraulic system.


6 - Continuous Flow This alert indicator will light when the continuous flow is activated.

7 - Work Tool System
• This alert indicator will light red when the work tool lockout control is activated.

• This alert indicator will light amber when the interlock override is activated.

8 - Hydraulics
• This alert indicator will light red and an audible alert will sound when the temperature of the hydraulic oil is too high. If this indicator comes on, stop the machine immediately. Stop the engine and investigate the problem.

• This indicator will light amber when the hydraulic oil filter is not functioning properly. Stop the machine and replace the oil filter. The indicator will stay on until the hydraulic oil has warmed up. Do not operate the machine until the light turns off.

9 - Glow Plug Starting Aid With the engine start switch in the ON position, this alert indicator will light when the glow plugs are activated. The operator should wait until this light is no longer illuminated before starting the machine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Engine Starting” for more information about the glow plug starting aid.

10 - Engine
• This alert indicator will light red and an audible alert will sound when the engine coolant temperature is too high. If this alert indicator comes on, stop the machine immediately. Stop the engine and investigate the cause.

• This alert indicator will light red and an audible alert will sound when the engine oil pressure is low. If this alert indicator comes on, stop the machine immediately. Stop the engine and investigate the cause.

• This alert indicator will light amber when the air cleaner indicator is activated. Stop the machine and service the air cleaner.

11 - Machine Security System This alert indicator will light when the Machine Security System is activated. Refer to “Machine Security System” for more details about the security system.

12 - Two-Speed Control This alert indicator will light when rabbit mode is selected with the two speed control.

13 - Creeper Control This alert indicator will light when creeper mode is selected.
14 - Ride Control  This alert indicator will light when the Ride Control switch is “ON” and the necessary ground speed is reached for Ride Control activation.

15 - Joystick Control Pattern 1  If your machine is equipped with a Selectable Control Pattern, this alert indicator will light when the Caterpillar Joystick Control Pattern is activated.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls - Joystick Controls” for information about the joystick control patterns. If your machine does not have the Dedicated Control Pattern, the light will flash until a selection is made.

16 - Alternate Joystick Control Pattern 2  If your machine is equipped with a Selectable Control Pattern, this alert indicator will light when the Alternate Joystick Control Pattern is activated.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls - Joystick Controls” for information about the joystick control patterns. If your machine does not have the Dedicated Control Pattern, the light will flash until a selection is made.

Machine Security System (If Equipped)

**NOTICE**
This machine is equipped with a Caterpillar Machine Security System (MSS) and may not start under certain conditions. Read the following information and know your machine's settings. Your Caterpillar Dealer can identify your machine settings.

**Machine Security System (MSS) –**
Machines that are equipped with a Caterpillar Machine Security System (MSS) can be identified by a decal in the operator station. MSS is designed to prevent theft of the machine or unauthorized operation.

**Basic Operation**

MSS may be programmed to read a standard Caterpillar key or an electronic key. The electronic key contains an electronic chip within the plastic housing of the key. Each key emits a unique signal to the MSS. The keys can be identified by a gray housing or a yellow housing. MSS can have programmed settings to require an electronic key or a standard Caterpillar key for starting during certain periods of time.

When the key start switch of the machine is turned to the ON position, the ECM will read the unique ID that is stored in the electronic key. The ECM will then compare this ID to the list of authorized keys. The status light is located on the alert indicator panel. If the light is on, the key is not authorized.

**Note:** MSS will not shut down the machine after the machine has started.

**Security Management**

The MSS has the capability to allow you to program the system to automatically activate at different time periods with different keys. The MSS can also be programmed to reject a specific electronic key after a selected date and time. When you turn the key to the OFF position and the MSS is active, you have a 30 second interval in order to restart the machine with an unauthorized key. Also if the machine stalls, there is a 30 second interval for restarting the machine. This 30 second interval is counted from the time of turning the key to the OFF position.

**Note:** Know your machine's settings because the use of an electronic key is no guarantee that the machine can be restarted.

An expiration date can be set for each electronic key that is contained in the list of keys for the machine. The key will no longer start the machine when the internal clock in the security system passes the expiration date. Each entry in the list of keys can have a different expiration date.

Spare keys are available from your dealer. Before a key can operate the machine, the MSS must be set to accept that particular key. Contact your Caterpillar dealer for information on additional features of the MSS.
Engine Starting

**Engine Starting**

**SMCS Code:** 1000; 7000

---

**WARNING**

Do not use aerosol types of starting aids such as ether. Such use could result in an explosion and personal injury.

---

It is important to prepare the machine for operation in temperatures that are below 0 °C (32 °F). It is also important to follow the appropriate warm up procedures when the machine is operated in temperatures that are below 0 °C (32 °F).

Machine preparation for cold weather includes using the correct hydraulic system oil. The factory fills the hydraulic system with 10W hydraulic oil which has a minimum operating temperature of −20 °C (−4 °F). If the machine will be operated at temperatures below −20 °C (−4 °F), the 10W oil must be replaced with 0W30 hydraulic oil in order to provide the proper oil viscosity. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Lubricant Viscosities and Refill Capacities". Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU5898, "Cold Weather Recommendations for Caterpillar Machines". Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations".

---

**NOTICE**

Keep the engine speed low until the engine oil pressure alert indicator goes out. If the alert indicator does not go out within ten seconds, stop the engine and investigate the cause before starting again. Failure to do so can cause engine damage.

---

**NOTICE**

If the engine does not start within 30 seconds, disengage the starter. Wait for 2 minutes and repeat the procedure.

---

**NOTICE**

If you fail to follow the steps described below, damage to the engine or damage to the hydraulic system may occur.

---

1. Fasten the seat belt.

2. Pull the armrests downward.

3. Before the engine is started, check for the presence of bystanders or maintenance personnel. Ensure that all personnel are clear of the machine. Briefly sound the forward horn before you start the engine.

4. Move the governor control lever or the accelerator pedal to low idle.

**Note:** If you are starting the engine in cold conditions, turn the engine start switch key to the ON position. If the glow plug indicator light is ON, wait until the light goes out. Then turn the key to the START position. After the engine starts, the glow plugs may continue to operate briefly, even though the light is off.

5. Turn the engine start switch key to the START position in order to start the engine. Release the key after the engine has started.

**Note:** If the machine is equipped with "Pattern Changer", you must select a pattern before you disengage the parking brake.

6. Disengage the parking brake.

7. Run the engine for 5 minutes before performing the following procedure. Run the engine at half throttle. Hold the work tool joystick control in the TILT BACK position for thirty seconds. Release the control for thirty seconds. Hold the work tool joystick control in the DUMP position for thirty seconds. Release the control for thirty seconds. Perform the procedure for three minutes.

**Note:** If you are operating the machine below 0 °C (32 °F), perform the procedure for eight minutes.

---

**NOTICE**

Do not use the hydraulic interlock override function to warm up the machine.

---

8. Keep all personnel away from the machine. Move the machine very slowly to an open area. Repeat Step 7 as you move the machine back and forth for 3 m (10 ft).

**Note:** More warm up time may be required if the hydraulic functions are sluggish.
Operation

Operation Information

SMCS Code: 7000

General Information

1. Adjust the operator’s seat.
2. Fasten the seat belt.
3. Lower the armrests.
4. Start the engine and allow the machine to warm up. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Engine Starting”.
5. Disengage the parking brake.
6. Raise all lowered work tools and attachments in order to negotiate any obstacles.
7. Smoothly move the speed and direction control for the desired direction and speed.

To prevent injury, make sure that no people are working on the machine or near the machine. To prevent injury, keep the machine under control at all times.

Avoid any situation that causes the tracks of the machine to spin on the ground. Avoid spinning the tracks. This will extend the life of the track.

Operating on a Slope

When it is necessary to travel across a slope, never exceed a slope that is greater than 3 to 1 (18.4°).

When it is possible, avoid operating the machine across a slope. When it is possible, operate the machine up a slope and down a slope. Never exceed a slope that is greater than 25 degrees for continuous fore/aft slope operation and 35 degrees intermittent fore/aft operation. The engine has an intermittent rating of 15 minutes. Do not turn the machine while you are operating on a slope.

NOTICE
When it is necessary to operate the machine on a slope, keep bucket loads light in order to decrease the possibility of derailing the tracks.

NOTICE
If the correct method for turning is not followed, the tracks may derail.

When it is necessary to travel across a slope, the following steps should always be followed:

NOTICE
The use of this machine in certain applications can cause premature wear and/or failure of the tracks. Applications that may cause premature wear and/or failure of the tracks include: use in rocky terrain, use in gravel, use in concrete demolition, and use in terrain where metal debris is present.

Damage to the tracks that is caused from using the machine in these conditions is not covered under warranty.
**Operating on a Transition**

**NOTICE**
Avoid operating this machine on transitions. Operating this machine on transitions may cause the tracks to derail.

When the machine is operated on a transition, the tracks may not be supported fully.

When the tracks are not supported fully, the wheels may ride on top of the drive lugs of the tracks. The track will derail if you continue to travel on the transition.

If you must travel on a transition, travel the machine at 90° to the transition. Do not perform hard turns or fast turns when you are operating the machine on the transition.

**Counterrotate turn**

For maximum life of the undercarriage, use more gradual turns while you slowly move forward or reverse. Gradual turns will help minimize wear on the track and wear on the wheels. Only use counterrotate turns, if necessary. Sharp turns will increase the wear on the components of the undercarriage.
Work Tool Coupler Operation

SMCS Code: 6129; 7000

**WARNING**

Improper Attachment of the Work Tool could result in injury or death.

Do not operate the machine without confirmation that the coupler pins are fully engaged. Follow the operating procedures in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Attaching the Work Tool

**Note:** Before you install the work tool, inspect the coupler and the work tool mounting bracket for any wear or for any damage. Ensure that the work tool mounting bracket and the face of the coupler are clean. Ensure that the coupler has no accumulation of material. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Quick Coupler - Clean/Inspect" and Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Work Tool Mounting Bracket - Inspect" for inspection procedures.

1. Position the work tool on a level surface. Move the hydraulic lines (if equipped) for the work tool and electrical lines (if equipped) away from the work tool mounting bracket.

2. If the machine is equipped with a manual coupler, ensure that the levers(1) for the coupler are in the DISENGAGED position. If the machine is equipped with a hydraulic quick coupler refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls” for details on the location and the operation of the hydraulic quick coupler control.

3. Enter the machine.

4. Fasten the seat belt and lower the armrests.

5. Start the engine.

6. Disengage the parking brake.

7. Tilt the quick coupler assembly forward.

8. Align the quick coupler assembly (6) between the outer plates (5) of the mounting bracket. Move the quick coupler assembly under the angled plate (4) of the mounting bracket and rack back the work tool.

9. Fully lower the loader arms.

**WARNING**

Improper attachment of the work tool could result in injury or death. If the work tool touches the ground, the work tool may move away from the coupler. Do not allow the work tool to touch the ground until the coupler pins are fully engaged.

10. Turn the engine start switch key to the OFF position in order to stop the engine.

11. If the work tool requires hydraulics, the hydraulic system pressure must be released before you connect the work tool. Refer to the section “Auxiliary Hydraulic Pressure Release”.

12. Exit the machine.

**Note:** If you are installing a material handling arm that is not equipped with the optional center step, do not exit the machine. A second person needs to perform steps 13 through step 15.
13. Engage the coupler pins(3). If the machine is equipped with a manual coupler, ensure that the levers(1) for the coupler are in the ENGAGED position. If the machine is equipped with a hydraulic quick coupler refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls” for details on engaging the coupler pins.

14. If the work tool requires hydraulics, refer to the following procedure in order to connect the hydraulic hoses.

- Route the hydraulic hoses through the hose guide on the machine in order to prevent damage to the hoses. Not all work tools require the hydraulic hoses to be routed through the hose guide. The work tool Operation and Maintenance Manual will inform you if the hydraulic hoses need to be routed through the hose guide. Caterpillar work tools require the hoses to be routed through the hose guide.

- Ensure that the quick connect couplers are clean.

- Connect the auxiliary hydraulic hoses for the work tool to the machine. Twist the collar of the quick connect coupler for one quarter of a turn in order to secure the hydraulic connections. If the work tool uses High Flow hydraulics, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls - Auxiliary Hydraulic Controls” for operating details.
d. If the work tool is equipped with electrical lines, then route the electrical lines with the hydraulic hoses and connect the wire harness to the electrical connector (E) on the host machine. Check the connections in order to ensure that the connections are properly secured. Check the connections on the work tool in order to ensure that the connections are in the correct receptacle.

Note: If your High Flow work tool does not have a wiring harness, a Jumper Plug needs to be installed on the electrical plug for the work tool control. Without this Jumper Plug, the machine will not provide high flow to the work tool. Please refer to your Parts Manual for the current part number for the Jumper Plug.

e. If the work tool is equipped with a water line, then connect the water line from the work tool to the connector on the machine. Move the water line to a position that is away from the work tool mounting bracket.

Illustration 66
(3) Coupler Pins
(4) Manual Work Tool Coupler
(5) Hydraulic Work Tool Coupler
(6) Lever for the Coupler Pin

15. Visually ensure that both coupler pins (3) are extending out of the holes in the work tool mounting bracket.

16. Use the following procedure to verify engagement of the coupler pins.

a. Enter the machine.

b. Fasten the seat belt and lower the armrests.

c. Start the engine.

d. Disengage the parking brake.

e. Raise the work tool off the ground.

f. Visually inspect the coupler pins (3) in order to ensure that the pins are fully extended through the work tool.
**Resident Control**

**g.** Visually inspect the lever (6) that holds the coupler pins in order to ensure that the lever is in the proper position.

**h.** Activate the tilt control in order to tilt the work tool downward.

**i.** Apply down pressure on the work tool.

**Note:** The work tool Operation and Maintenance Manual will inform you if forward pressure should not be applied on a work tool.

**j.** Move the machine backward. Ensure that the coupler pins do not disengage from the work tool.

**17.** Test the work tool for leaks and for proper operation.

**Removing the Work Tool**

**WARNING**

Disengaging the coupler pins will release the work tool from control of the operator.

Serious injury or death may result from disengaging the work tool when it is in an unstable position or carrying a load.

**Place the work tool in a safe position before disengaging the coupler pins.**

**NOTICE**

Auxiliary hoses for work tools must be disconnected before the quick coupler is disengaged.

Pulling the work tool with the auxiliary hoses could result in damage to the host machine or the work tool.

1. Position the machine on level ground.

2. Lower the work tool to the ground.

3. Rack back the work tool until the work tool is slightly off the ground.

4. Turn the engine start switch key to the OFF position in order to stop the engine.

5. If the work tool requires hydraulics the hydraulic system pressure must be released. Refer to the section “Releasing the Auxiliary Hydraulic System Pressure”.

6. Perform Step 7 through Step 12 only after you have released the hydraulic system pressure.

7. Disconnect the auxiliary hydraulic hoses from the machine.

**Note:** If protective caps are available, install protective caps over the quick connect couplers.

8. If hoses are routed through the hose guide, remove the hoses from the hose guide. Move the hoses to a position that is away from the work tool mounting bracket.

**Note:** Connect the hoses for the work tool together. Connecting the hoses together will reduce the probability of contaminating the hydraulic system. Connecting the hoses together will reduce the buildup of pressure in the hoses. Connecting the hoses together will ease the connection of the hoses to the machine.

9. If the work tool is equipped with an electrical line, then disconnect the wire harness from the connector on the machine. If protective caps are available, install protective caps over the electrical connectors.

10. If the auxiliary electrical line is routed through the hose guide, remove the line from the hose guide. Move the auxiliary electrical line to a position that is away from the work tool mounting bracket.

11. If the work tool is equipped with a water line, then disconnect the water line from the connector on the machine. Move the water line to a position that is away from the work tool mounting bracket.

12. Exit the machine.

**Note:** If you are removing a material handling arm that is not equipped with an optional center step, do not exit the machine. A second person needs to perform step 13.

13. Disengage the coupler pins. If the machine is equipped with a manual coupler, ensure that the levers for the coupler are in the DISENGAGED position. If the machine is equipped with a hydraulic quick coupler, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls” for details on disengaging the coupler pins with the hydraulic quick coupler control.

14. Enter the machine.

15. Fasten the seat belt and lower the armrests.

16. Start the engine.

17. Disengage the parking brake.
18. As you slowly back away from the mounting bracket, tilt the quick coupler assembly forward until the top of the quick coupler assembly clears the angled plate.


**Releasing the Auxiliary Hydraulic System Pressure**

**NOTICE**
If the work tool is equipped with an Operation and Maintenance Manual, follow the procedure that is described in the Operation and Maintenance Manual for that work tool. Damage to the work tool and the host machine may occur if you do not follow the proper installation procedure.


**Standard Flow Auxiliary Circuit and the High Flow Auxiliary Circuit (if equipped)**

**Illustration 67**

(8) Auxiliary Hydraulic Pressure Release

1. After the engine has run in order to charge the accumulator, turn the ignition switch to the OFF position. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position. Press the parking brake switch and release the parking brake switch.

**Note:** The parking brake indicator will remain illuminated since the engine is not running. When the indicator for the work tool is no longer illuminated, the pressure can be released.

2. Push up on the locking tab and press the bottom of the switch in order to release the pressure in the Standard Flow Auxiliary Circuit and the High Flow Auxiliary Circuit (if equipped). Hold the switch for four seconds and release the switch.

3. Move the engine start switch to the OFF position.

**Secondary Auxiliary Circuit**

The pressure in the secondary circuit is released with the following procedure:

If electrical power is available and the accumulator is charged, the pressure can be released from the operator station with the work tool control.

1. Fasten the seat belt. Lower the armrests.

2. Move the engine start switch to the ON position. Press the parking brake switch and release the parking brake switch.

**Note:** The parking brake indicator will remain illuminated since the engine is not running. When the indicator for the work tool is no longer illuminated, the pressure can be released.

3. Activate the controls for the secondary auxiliary function. Activate the controls several times in order to release all the pressure. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Operator Controls - Auxiliary Hydraulic Controls” for information about the controls.

If the pressure is not released, the accumulator is not charged. It is possible to recharge the accumulator by running the engine or cranking the engine for a period of fifteen seconds. Repeat steps 2 and 3 in order to release the pressure.
Material Handling Arm Operation

SMCS Code: 6400; 6700; 7000

Inspect the material handling arm and the attachments for wear and damage. Ensure that the load is properly attached to the material handling arm before you operate the machine.

Note: The physical size and the weight of the load determines the lifting point that is appropriate. Whenever it is possible, use the lifting point 1. This will improve the stability and this will reduce the movement of the load. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Material Handling Arm Rated Load” for the limitations on the weight.

Note: Use only Caterpillar 9V-2714 Hook and Caterpillar 9V-2715 Shackle to attach a load to the material handling arm. Never use an open hook. Use a line that is rated for 2.5 times the weight of the load.

WARNING
Do not allow anyone to be near a suspended load unless the position lock pin is installed. If the lift arms must be raised to handle a tall load, do not allow anyone to be near the suspended load unless the lift arms are blocked. Failure to follow the instructions or heed the warnings could result in injury or death.

Two Person Operation

Attaching A Load

1. Verify that the load does not exceed the weight limit. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Material Handling Arm Rated Load” for the rated load capacities.

2. Keep all personnel out of the work area at all times, except when you are attaching or removing a load.

3. Enter the machine. Start the engine.

4. Disengage the parking brake.

5. Keep the loader arms in the fully lowered position. Slowly position the material handling arm until either lifting point 1 or the lifting point 2 is directly above the load.

6. Tilt the material handling arm forward until the hook is slightly higher than the load in order to minimize swinging of the load.

7. Stop the engine.

8. Wait as the second person attaches the load securely to the hook. The second person needs to ensure that the hook clasp is in the locked position.

9. Ensure that ALL personnel have left the work area.

10. Start the engine.

11. Disengage the parking brake.

12. Slowly tilt back the material handling arm until the material handling arm is fully tilted back.

13. Stop the engine.
14. Wait as the second person installs the position lock pin through the hole in the material handling arm and the hole in the loader arm of the machine.

Note: This will prevent the material handling arm from tilting forward.

15. Wait as the second person secures the load to the tie-down points with a suitable line in order to minimize load swing.

Note: Do not move the load when you are securing the load. Do not pull the load toward the material handling arm when you are securing the load to the tie-down points.

16. Wait as the second person removes the position lock pin. Wait as the second person places the pin in the STORED position on the material handling arm.

Removing a Load

1. Slowly tilt back the material handling arm until the material handling arm is fully tilted back. Lower the loader arms fully.

2. Stop the engine.

3. Wait as the second person installs the position lock pin through the hole in the material handling arm and the hole in the loader arm of the machine.

4. Wait as the second person removes the line that secures the load to the tie-down points.

5. Wait as the second person removes the position lock pin. Wait as the second person places the pin in the STORED position on the material handling arm.

6. Remove all personnel from the work area.

7. Start the engine.

8. Disengage the parking brake.

9. Lower the load to the ground.

10. Stop the engine.

11. Wait as the second person removes the load from the hook.

12. Remove all personnel from the work area.

13. Start the engine.

14. Disengage the parking brake.

15. Slowly tilt back the material handling arm until the material handling arm is fully tilted back.

16. Back away from the load.

One Person Operation

Note: The material handling arm must be equipped with a center step in order to do the one person operation.

Attaching the Load

1. Verify that the load does not exceed the weight limit. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Material Handling Arm Rated Load” for the rated load capacities.

2. Keep all personnel out of the work area at all times, except when you are attaching or removing a load.

3. Enter the machine. Start the engine.

4. Disengage the parking brake.
5. Keep the loader arms in the fully lowered position. Slowly position the material handling arm until either lifting point 1 or lifting point 2 is directly above the load.

6. Tilt the material handling arm forward until the hook is slightly higher than the load in order to minimize swinging of the load.

7. Stop the engine. Exit the machine.

8. Attach the load securely to the hook. Ensure that the hook clasp is in the LOCKED position.

9. Keep all personnel out of the work area.

10. Enter the machine. Start the engine.

11. Disengage the parking brake.

12. Slowly tilt back the material handling arm until the material handling arm is fully tilted back.

13. Stop the engine. Exit the machine.

14. Install the position lock pin through the hole in the material handling arm and the hole in the loader arm of the machine.

15. Secure the load to the tie-down points with a suitable line in order to minimize load swing.

**Note:** Do not move the load when you are securing the load. Do not pull the load toward the material handling arm when you are securing the load to the tie-down points.

16. Remove the position lock pin and place the pin in the STORED position on the material handling arm.

**Removing a Load**

1. Fully tilt back the material handling arm. Fully lower the loader arms.

2. Stop the engine. Exit the machine.

3. Install the position lock pin through the hole in the loader arm of the machine.

4. Remove the line that secures the load to the tie-down points.

5. Remove the position lock pin and place the pin in the STORED position on the material handling arm.

6. Keep all personnel out of the work area.

7. Enter the machine. Start the engine.

8. Disengage the parking brake.
9. Lower the load to the ground.
10. Stop the engine. Exit the machine.

**Note:** Make sure that the load is stable.
11. Remove the load from the hook.
12. Keep all personnel out of the work area.
13. Enter the machine. Start the engine.
14. Disengage the parking brake.
15. Slowly tilt back the material handling arm until the material handling arm is fully tilted back.
16. Back away from the load.

**Traveling with a Load**
1. Ensure that all personnel have left the work area.
2. Start the engine.
3. Disengage the parking brake.
4. Raise the load so that the load is slightly off of the ground.
5. Slowly travel to the destination. Keep the load as close to the ground as possible. Travel up slopes with the load uphill. Travel down slopes with the load uphill. Do not travel across slopes.

**Pallet Forks Operation**

**SMCS Code:** 6700; 7000

1. Put the fork tines in the Unlocked position. Space the fork tines as far as possible from each other.
2. Put the fork tines in the Locked position.
3. Slowly, move the machine into position and engage the load. The machine should be square with the load. Space the forks evenly between the pallet stringers.
4. Move the machine forward until the load contacts the carriage.
5. Lift the load carefully.
6. Slowly, move the machine in reverse until the load is clear enough to lower.
7. Carefully lower the load while you tilt the forks back to the travel position.

Travel with the load as low as possible while you still maintain ground clearance.

Travel with the load uphill on upgrades and on downgrades.
Dissection of the image content:

**Angle Blade Operation**

**SMCS Code:** 6060; 7000

---

**Height Adjustment**

In order to properly adjust the height of the blade, use the following procedure:

1. Start the engine.

2. Position the blade so that the vertical pivot pin (5) is in the vertical position.

3. Move the angle of the blade fully from one side to the other side. The blade cutting edge should remain parallel to the ground.

4. If the blade cutting edge does not remain parallel to the ground, the height of the blade needs to be adjusted. Use the following steps in order to adjust the height:
   - a. Lower the blade and the frame onto adjustable stands.
   - b. Stop the engine and remove the ignition key.
   - c. Remove the bolts (6) for adjusting the height.
   - d. Move the frame to the desired height.
   - e. Ensure that the shims are installed. Install the bolts for adjusting the height. Tighten the bolts to a torque of 270 ± 40 N·m (199 ± 30 lb ft).
   - f. In order to test the adjustment, start the engine.
   - g. Repeat steps 2 and 3.

---

**Tilt Lock**

The angle blade has two modes of operation:

- Locked
- Spring load trip

In order to lock the blade, install the locking pin (4). In the locked position, the blade can be used for heavy operations. The blade will not tilt with the locking pin in the locked position.

There may be lighter operations that allow the blade to tilt. Remove the locking pin and store the locking pin in the cab. This will help prevent damage to the blade or to the frame. If the plowing overcomes 306 kg (675 lb) of spring force, the top of the blade will tilt forward.

---

**Work Tool Operation**

**SMCS Code:** 6700; 7000

The following table describes the functionality of approved Caterpillar work tools.
Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Operator Controls - Joystick Controls" and Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Operator Controls - Auxiliary Hydraulic Controls" for the location and operation of the joystick controls that are referenced below.

**Note:** All of the work tool functions that are described below are viewed from the left side of the machine.

Operate the machine and the work tool slowly in an open area. Check for proper operation of all controls and all protective devices on the machine and the work tool.

**Note:** During initial operation, unexpected motion may occur due to air in the hydraulic system. Cycle the hydraulic system approximately five times in order to purge air out of the circuit. You may need to add hydraulic oil to the machine after the machine fills the hydraulic circuits of the work tool. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check" for the proper procedure for checking the hydraulic oil level.

**Note:** If your High Flow work tool does not have a wiring harness, a Jumper Plug (241-3763 Plug As) should be installed on the electrical plug (1) for the work tool control. Without this Jumper Plug, the machine will not provide High Flow to the work tool. The affected machines are in the following list:

### Simple Hydromechanical Work Tools

Work tools in the following table are approved by Caterpillar. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Operator Controls - Joystick Controls" and Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Operator Controls - Auxiliary Hydraulic Controls" for the location and operation of the joystick controls that are referenced in the table.

Please read the manual and understand the instructions and warnings in the Operation and Maintenance Manual for these work tools. Consult your Caterpillar dealer for replacement manuals. Proper care is your responsibility.

For all High Flow work tools, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Operator Controls - Joystick Controls". Connect the wiring harness to the electrical plug (E).
Table 23

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Work Tool</th>
<th>Left Hand Joystick</th>
<th>Right Hand Joystick</th>
<th>Actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8 5 6 7</td>
<td>1 2 3 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multipurpose Bucket</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>The bucket clam closes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>The bucket clam opens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Grapple Tools</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>The grapple closes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>The grapple opens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angle Blade</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>The blade angles to the left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>The blade angles to the right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dozer Blade</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>The blade angles to the left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>The blade angles to the right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>The blade tilts down to the left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>The blade tilts down to the right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>The blade tilts down to the left and the blade angles to the left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>The blade tilts down to the right and the blade angles to the right.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Complex Hydromechanical Work Tools**

**Note:** For the functionality of Caterpillar Complex Work Tools, please read the Operation and Maintenance Manual for the work tool.

Consult your Caterpillar dealer for replacement manuals. Please read all the safety messages and understand all the safety messages for each work tool.
Parking

Stopping the Engine

**SMCS Code:** 1000; 7000

---

**NOTICE**
Stopping the engine immediately after it has been working under load, can result in overheating and accelerated wear of the engine components.

Refer to the following procedure, to allow the engine to cool, and to prevent excessive temperatures in the turbocharger housing (if equipped), which could cause oil coking problems.

1. Operate the engine for five minutes at low idle with no load.

*Note:* This allows hot areas in the engine to cool gradually. This will extend the engine life.

2. Move the joysticks to the NEUTRAL position.

3. Turn the engine start switch key to the OFF position.


5. Ensure that the engine start switch key is in the OFF position after the pressure in the auxiliary hydraulic system has been relieved.

6. Cover the exhaust opening after the machine has cooled down.

---

Stopping the Engine if an Electrical Malfunction Occurs

**SMCS Code:** 1000; 7000

**Inside Cab**

The fuse panel is located behind the seat on the right side.

Remove the cover in order to access the fuse panel.
Remove the relay for the fuel shutoff solenoid (28) in order to shut off the fuel supply to the engine.

**Note:** Do not operate the machine until the malfunction has been corrected.

**Outside Cab**

1. Lower the work tool to the ground.

2. Raise the armrests. Unfasten the seat belt. Exit the machine.

3. Open the engine access door. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Access Doors and Covers”.

4. Unplug the connector for the fuel shutoff solenoid.

**Note:** Do not operate the machine until the malfunction has been corrected.

---

**Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped**

**SMCS Code:** 6700; 7000

---

**WARNING**

Personal injury or death can result from a work tool falling.

Keep personnel away from the front of the machine when lowering the work tool.

---

Before lowering any equipment with the engine stopped, clear the area around the equipment of all personnel. The procedure will vary with the type of equipment that is lowered. Keep in mind that most systems use a high pressure fluid or air in order to raise or lower the equipment. The procedure will cause high pressure air, hydraulic fluid, or some other media to be released in order to lower the equipment. Wear appropriate personal protective equipment and follow the established procedure in the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped” in the Operation Section of the manual.
Lowering the Equipment with the Accumulator Charged

If electrical power is available and the accumulator is charged, the loader arms can be lowered from the operator station with the work tool control.

1. Fasten the seat belt. Lower the armrests.

2. Move the engine start switch to the ON position. Press the parking brake switch and release the parking brake switch.

Note: The parking brake indicator will remain illuminated since the engine is not running. When the indicator for the work tool is no longer illuminated, the pressure can be released.

3. Slowly move the work tool control to the LOWER position in order to slowly lower the loader arms.

If the loader arms do not lower, the accumulator is not charged. It is possible to recharge the accumulator by cranking the engine for a period of fifteen seconds. Repeat step 2 and 3.

If there is no electrical power the loader arms must be lowered by using the procedure that is explained next.

Alternate Lowering the Equipment

**WARNING**

Personal injury can result from oil under high pressure.

DO NOT allow high pressure oil to contact skin.

Wear appropriate protective equipment while working with high pressure oil systems.

The loader arms must be lowered manually if the accumulator is not charged or if there is no electrical power.

Do not go under the raised lift arm without the brace for the loader lift arm in the LOCKED position.

Note: Make sure that there are no people near the front or sides of the machine.
Machine Storage Procedure

SMCS Code: 7000

NOTICE
If long term storage for a period of time exceeding one year is necessary, contact your local Caterpillar dealer for the preferred procedure to use in your specific case.

This machine may be stored for one year or less in a temperature range of −32 °C (−25.6 °F) to 43 °C (109.4 °F).

To store machines in ambient temperatures between −20 °C (−4.0 °F) to 43 °C (109.4 °F), refer to Special Instructions, SEHS9031, “Storage Procedure for Caterpillar Products”.

To store machines in ambient temperatures between −32 °C (−26 °F) and −21 °C (−6 °F), refer to the following publications and topics:

- Special Instructions, SEHS9031, “Storage Procedure For Caterpillar Products”

Note: Do not use the steps that are listed in Special Instructions, SEHS9031 in order to maintain the fuel system.

Use the following steps to maintain the fuel system.

1. Drain the fuel tank. Follow the procedure that is described in Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Fuel Tank Water and Sediment - Drain”.

2. Drain the water separator and replace the element. Follow the procedure that is described in Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Fuel System Water Separator Element - Replace”.

3. Fill the fuel tank so that the fuel tank is at least 20% full with Calibration Fluid.

4. Prime the fuel system. Follow the procedure that is described in Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Fuel System Prime”.

5. Start the engine and run at low idle for approximately 15 minutes in order to allow the calibration fluid to flush the diesel fuel from the system.

6. Turn off the engine.

7. Add .15 mL (0.02 oz) of commercial biocide for every 1 L (0.3 US gal) of calibration fluid to the fuel tank. Seal all openings to the fuel tank in order to prevent evaporation of the preservative.
Transportation Information

Shipping the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000

Investigate the travel route for overpass clearances. Make sure that there will be adequate clearance.

Before you load the machine and before you unload the machine remove ice, snow, or other slippery material from the loading dock and from thetrailering surface. Removal of ice, snow, or other slippery material will help prevent the slipping of the machine as you load the machine. Removing ice, snow, or other slippery material will help prevent the machine from moving in transit.

NOTICE
Obey all state and local laws governing the weight, width and length of a load.

Make sure the cooling system has proper antifreeze if moving machine to a colder climate.

Observe all regulations governing wide loads.

Do not use a fork lift to lift the machine. Using a fork lift to move your machine can result in property damage.

Choose the flattest ground when you load the machine or when you unload the machine.

2. When you use loading ramps, make sure that the loading ramps have adequate length, adequate width, and adequate strength. In addition, make sure that the surface of the loading ramps are clean. This will help prevent the machine from sliding in all types of weather conditions. This will allow the machine to move on the ramps smoothly.

3. Maintain the slope of the loading ramps within 15 degrees of the ground.

4. Minimize any step between the base of the loading ramps and the ground.

5. Clean the tracks on the machine in order to prevent any slippage.

Loading the Machine

1. Position the machine so that the heaviest end of the machine is going up the ramps first.

2. Use caution when you travel over the areas around the loading ramp joints. Maintain the balance point of the machine. Keep the work tool low.

3. After you load the machine onto the trailer be sure that the machine is properly positioned on the trailer bed.

4. Lower the work tool to the floor of the transport vehicle.

5. Turn the engine start switch key to the OFF position in order to stop the engine.

6. Turn the engine start switch key to the ON position. Push the parking brake switch.

7. Move all joystick controls while you are pressing several times on each side of the auxiliary hydraulic control (if equipped) in order to relieve hydraulic pressure.

8. Move all hydraulic controls to the NEUTRAL position.

9. Turn the engine start switch key to the OFF position. Remove the engine start switch key.

10. Move the armrests to the RAISED position. Unfasten the seat belt.

11. Attach any vandalism protection.

13. Cover the exhaust opening when the machine has cooled down.

Unloading the Machine

1. Position the machine so that the machine can drive straight down the loading ramps. Position the machine so that the heaviest end of the machine goes down the ramps last.

2. Use caution when you travel over the areas around the loading ramp joints in order to maintain the balance point of the machine. Keep the work tool low.

Roading the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000

Limitations for TON-kilometers per hour (TON-miles per hour) must be obeyed. Consult your tire dealer for the speed limit of the tires that are used.

Ensure that you have the required licenses and other similar items with you while you road the machine.

Ensure that your machine is equipped to comply with roading regulations.

Learn and obey all traffic regulations when you are roading the machine. Travel at a moderate speed. Observe all speed limitations when you road the machine. Ensure that all work tools remain securely attached to the work tool coupler. Ensure that appropriate locking pins remain in position.

Note: In Italy, limit Skid Steer Loaders that are equipped with two speed to low speed while roading.

Lifting and Tying Down the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000

NOTICE
Improper lifting or tiedowns can allow load to shift and can cause injury and damage.

Lifting the Machine

There are two lifting attachments for the machine:

- The single point lifting eye
- The four-point lifting group

Use one of the lifting attachments in order to lift the machine. Do not attach both lifting devices to the machine at the same time.

For lifting the machine, use properly rated cables and properly rated slings. Position the crane for a level machine lift. Do not drag the machine with a crane.

All work tools must be removed from the machine before the machine is lifted.

Note: Do not exceed the weight limit that is shown in Illustration 84. This film is located on the outside of the right-hand side of the cab.
The lifting devices will be mounted on the top of the cab. If any accessory is mounted to the cab roof, the attachment must be removed before lifting the machine.

When the four-point lifting group is used, the chain for each leg should be a minimum of 1 m (3.3 ft) in length. Keep the machine level during the lift.
Refer to the Cat Parts Manual for the current part number for the lifting device for your machine. The parts manuals are listed in the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Reference Information Section”.

**Lifting Point** – Lifting points are designated by this symbol.

The weight and the instructions that are given describe the machine as manufactured by Caterpillar. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Specifications” for weight information about your machine.

Do not allow any personnel in the area around the machine.

1. Remove the work tool. If necessary, cover any hydraulic lines and quick disconnect coupler on the machine.

2. Lower the lift arms completely.

3. Turn off the machine.

4. Attach the single point lifting device or the four point lifting device to the machine.

5. Use properly rated cables and slings for lifting. The crane should be in a position that the machine is lifted without swinging.

**Lifting the Grapple Rake**

Use properly rated cables and properly rated slings for lifting work tools. Position the crane for a level lift. Do not drag the work tool with a crane.

**Note:** The approximate weight of the 1829 mm (72 inch) Grapple Rake is 458 kg (1010 lb). The approximate weight of the 2134 mm (84 inch) Grapple Rake is 506 kg (1116 lb).

Use two hooks in the lifting eyes on the frame. Use a sling around the front torque tube at the center rake tine.

**Tying Down the Machine**

There may be more than one way to tie down the machine. Local regulations should be used to determine the best method. Obey all local and regional governmental regulations.
Two eyes are located on the front of the machine frame and two eyes are located on the rear of the machine frame.

Use the tie-downs shown in illustration 88.

**Note:** Use only the specified locations for tying down the machine. Do not use any other locations in order to tie down the machine. The eyes on the lift arms are for work tool restraint only. Never use the eyes on the lift arms for tie down or lifting.

Install tie-downs at all four locations. Place chocks in front of the machine and behind the machine.

**Tie-Down Point** – Tie-down points are designated by this symbol.

The weight and the instructions that are given describe the machine as manufactured by Caterpillar. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Specifications” for weight information about your machine.

1. Turn off the machine.

2. Use the properly rated cables and shackles for tying down the machine.

3. Use the front eyes and the rear eyes that are provided on the lower frame of your machine. Use corner protection when necessary.

**Note:** Where possible, avoid routing cables over tires or tracks. Avoid contact with the work tool to prevent false tension.
Alternate Method

If the alternate method is used, the cable angle should be between 30 degrees and 50 degrees.

**Note:** Use only the specified locations for tying down the machine. Do not use any other locations in order to tie down the machine.

Install tie-downs at all four locations. Place chocks in front of the machine and behind the machine.

Consult your Cat dealer for shipping instructions for your machine.
**Towing Information**

**Machine Retrieval**

**SMCS Code:** 7000

If the machine is disabled, the machine should be lifted onto a trailer in order to be transported. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Lifting and Tying Down the Machine" for the lifting procedure.

If the machine cannot be lifted, use the following guidelines in order to retrieve the machine.

Illustration 90

Two towing eyes (1) are located on the front of the machine.

Illustration 91

Two towing eyes (2) are located on the rear of the machine.

- The strength of the line should be at least 1.5 times the gross weight of the machine.

- Provide shielding in order to protect the operator if the line breaks.

- If a single line is used to pull the machine, then the line must be a minimum of 3 m (10 ft). If two lines are used to pull the machine, then each line must be a minimum of 1.5 m (5.0 ft).

- Do not exceed a maximum pull angle of 20 degrees in any direction.

- Attach the line to the towing eyes. Two towing eyes (1) are located on the front of the machine and two towing eyes (2) are located on the rear of the machine. Do not attach the line to any other point on the machine.

**NOTICE**

Do not attach the line to only one towing eye when you are retrieving the machine. Use both towing eyes. Damage to the machine may occur.
Each of the lines (3) must be a minimum of 1.5 m (5.0 ft).

NOTICE
Do not drag the machine for long distances. Damage to the tracks or the tires may occur.
Engine Starting (Alternate Methods)

Engine Starting with Jump Start Cables

SMCS Code: 1000; 1401; 7000

WARNING

Batteries give off flammable fumes that can explode resulting in personal injury.

Prevent sparks near the batteries. They could cause vapors to explode. Do not allow the jump start cable ends to contact each other or the machine.

Do not smoke when checking battery electrolyte levels.

Electrolyte is an acid and can cause personal injury if it contacts skin or eyes.

Always wear eye protection when starting a machine with jump start cables.

Improper jump start procedures can cause an explosion resulting in personal injury.

Always connect the positive (+) to positive (+) and the negative (−) to negative (−).

Jump start only with an energy source with the same voltage as the stalled machine.

Turn off all lights and accessories on the stalled machine. Otherwise, they will operate when the energy source is connected.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to engine bearings and to electrical circuits when you jump start a machine, do not allow the stalled machine to touch the machine that is used as the electrical source.

Severely discharged maintenance free batteries do not fully recharge from the alternator after jump starting. The batteries must be charged to proper voltage with a battery charger. Many batteries thought to be unusable are still rechargeable.

Use only equal voltage for starting. Check the battery and starter voltage rating of your machine. Use only the same voltage for jump starting. Use of a welder or higher voltage damages the electrical system. This machine has a 12 volt starting system. Use only the same voltage for jump starting.

Refer to Special Instruction, SEHS7633, “Battery Test Procedure” available from your Caterpillar dealer, for complete testing and charging information.

1. Engage the parking brake. Lower the work tools to the ground.


2. Move all hydraulic controls to the NEUTRAL position.

3. Turn the engine start switch key to the OFF position and turn all accessory switches to the OFF position.

4. Move the machine that is being used as an electrical source near the stalled machine so that the jump start cables reach the stalled machine. Do not allow the machines to contact each other.

5. Stop the engine of the machine that is being used as an electrical source. If you are using an auxiliary power source, turn off the charging system.

6. Ensure that the battery in the stalled machine is not frozen.
10. Connect the other negative end of the jump start cable to the lifting eye on the engine of the stalled machine. **Do not connect the jump start cable to the battery post.** Do not allow the jump start cables to contact the battery cables, the fuel lines, the hydraulic lines, or any moving parts.

11. Start the engine of the machine that is being used as an electrical source or energize the charging system on the auxiliary power source.

12. Wait at least two minutes before you attempt to start the stalled machine. This will allow the battery in the stalled machine to partially charge.

13. Attempt to start the stalled engine.

**Reference:** For the correct starting procedure, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Engine Starting”.

14. After the stalled engine starts, disconnect the negative jump start cable from the stalled machine.

15. Disconnect the negative jump start cable from the negative terminal of the electrical source.

16. Disconnect the positive jump start cable from the positive terminal of the electrical source.

17. Disconnect the positive jump start cable from the positive terminal of the stalled machine.

18. Conclude the failure analysis on the starting system of the stalled machine and/or on the charging system of the stalled machine. Check the machine while the engine is running and the charging system is in operation.

---

**Illustration 93**

The jump start post on the left side of the engine compartment is shown without the red cover.

7. Connect the positive jump start cable to the positive cable terminal that is provided in the engine compartment of the stalled machine.

   Do not allow the positive cable clamps to contact any metal except for the terminals.

8. Connect the other positive end of the jump start cable to the positive cable terminal of the electrical source.

9. Connect one negative end of the jump start cable to the negative cable terminal of the electrical source.
Access Doors and Covers

SMCS Code: 7273-572; 7273-573

Engine Access Door

Note: A pinch point exists between the top of the engine access door and the radiator guard. Keep hands away from this area when you close the engine access door.

The engine access door is located on the back of the machine.

1. Pull the release lever (3) in order to open the engine access door (1).

2. Move the retaining pin from the stored position (3) and put the retaining pin in the locked position (4). This will prevent the engine access door from closing inadvertently.

3. In order to close the engine access door, put the retaining pin in the stored position.

4. Close the engine access door. Ensure that the latch is engaged.
**Cab Tilting**

**SMCS Code:** 7301-506; 7301-509

---

**WARNING**

Do not go beneath cab unless cab is empty and support lever is engaged.

Failure to follow the instructions or heed the warnings could result in injury or death.

---

**WARNING**

Do not tilt the cab using an open door. The door must be closed and latched when lifting the cab. The door may become dislodged from its hinges and may cause serious personal injury or death.

---

**Tilting the Cab Upward**

1. Park the machine on level ground.

   **Note:** Empty the water tank (if equipped) before you tilt the cab.

2. Lower the loader arms fully. If you tilt the cab upward with the loader lift arms in the RAISED position, you must engage the brace for the loader lift arms. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Loader Lift Arm Brace Operation” for the process for engaging the brace for the loader lift arms.

3. Turn the engine start switch key to the OFF position.

4. Remove the two front bolts for the ROPS. There is one bolt on each side of the cab under the lift arm.

5. Close the cab door and ensure that the door is latched.

6. Tilt the cab upward. Stand on the ground when you tilt the cab.

   **Note:** More than one person may be needed to tilt the cab.
7. The cab support lever is on the right side of the machine. Make sure that the cab support lever is in the ENGAGED position.

Note: If water or other fluid is used, cover the ventilation ducts with plastic.

Tilting the Cab Downward

Note: More than one person may be needed to tilt the cab.

1. Remove the cover from the ventilation ducts.

2. Ensure that all persons are not under the cab. Remove all of the tools and unsecured items that are underneath the cab.

3. Tilt the cab upward. Move the cab support lever to the DISENGAGED position.

4. Tilt the cab downward.

5. Install the bolts for the ROPS. Torque the bolts to 125 ± 10 N·m (92 ± 7 lb ft).

Loader Lift Arm Brace Operation

SMCS Code: 6119-011-AB; 6119-012-AB

WARNING

Loader lift arm brace must be in place when working under raised lift arms.

Failure to follow the instructions or heed the warnings could result in injury or death.
Engage the Lift Arm Brace

1. Empty the work tool. Remove the work tool. Park the machine on level ground. Lower lift arms to the ground.

2. Remain in the seat with the seat belt fastened until the brace is installed.

Illustration 102

(1) Lift arm
(2) Lift arm brace
(3) Retaining pin
(4) Lift cylinder

3. A second person must remove the brace(2) from the storage position. Remove the retaining pin(3) and allow the lift arm brace to lower.

4. Raise the lift arms to the maximum height.

5. The second person should then swing the lift arm brace into the locked position on the lift cylinder. Secure the brace with the retaining pin.

6. Lower the lift arms against the brace.

Disengage the Lift Arm Brace

1. Enter the machine. Fasten the seat belt. Lower the armrests and remain in the seat until the brace is in the stored position.

2. Start the engine.

3. Slowly raise the lift arms until the brace is free. A second person must remove the retaining pin.

4. Slowly lower the lift arms.

5. A second person must return the brace to the storage position. Secure the brace with the retaining pin.

6. Slowly lower the lift arms to the ground.

Illustration 103

(5) Lift arm brace in the locked position

7. Stop the engine. Exit the machine.

Radiator Tilting

SMCS Code: 1353-506; 1353-509

1. Open the engine access door. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Access Doors and Covers".
2. The release lever for the radiator latch is located on the right side of the radiator. Push the release lever for the radiator latch. Tilt the radiator upward.

3. The strut lock is located on the right side of the engine compartment. Make sure that the strut lock is in the LOCKED position.

4. In order to tilt the radiator downward, push the lock on the strut and release the lock.

5. Tilt the radiator downward. Make sure that the radiator is in the LOCKED position.

6. Close the engine access door.

**Tilting the Radiator Guard**

1. Open the engine access door. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Access Doors and Covers”.

2. Remove the retaining pin (2) for the radiator guard. Tilt the radiator guard upward.

3. In order to tilt the radiator guard downward, pull down on the radiator guard and install the retaining pin.
Lubricant Viscosities and Refill Capacities

Lubricant Viscosities

SMCS Code: 7581

General Information for Lubricants

When you are operating the machine in temperatures below −20°C (−4°F), refer to Special Publication, SEBU5898, “Cold Weather Recommendations”. This publication is available from your Cat dealer.

For cold-weather applications where transmission oil SAE 0W-20 is recommended, Cat Cold Weather TDTO is recommended.

Caterpillar has determined that Medium Wheel Loaders equipped with the High Ambient Cooling Attachment can operate with Cat HYDO Advanced 10 Hydraulic System Oil in ambient temperatures from −20°C (−4°F) to 50°C (122°F).

Refer to the “Lubricant Information” section in the latest revision of the Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations” for a list of Cat engine oils and for detailed information. This manual may be found on the Web at Safety.Cat.com.

The footnotes are a key part of the tables. Read ALL footnotes that pertain to the machine compartment in question.

Selecting the Viscosity

In order to select the proper oil for each machine compartment, refer to the “Lubricant Viscosity for Ambient Temperature” table. Use the oil type AND oil viscosity for the specific compartment at the proper ambient temperature.

The proper oil viscosity grade is determined by the minimum ambient temperature (the air in the immediate vicinity of the machine). Measure the temperature when the machine is started and while the machine is operated. In order to determine the proper oil viscosity grade, refer to the “Min” column in the table. This information reflects the coldest ambient temperature condition for starting a cold machine and for operating a cold machine. Refer to the “Max” column in the table for operating the machine at the highest temperature that is anticipated. Unless specified otherwise in the “Lubricant Viscosities for Ambient Temperatures” tables, use the highest oil viscosity that is allowed for the ambient temperature.

Machines that are operated continuously should use oils that have the higher oil viscosity in the final drives and in the differentials. The oils that have the higher oil viscosity will maintain the highest possible oil film thickness. Refer to “General Information for Lubricants” article, “Lubricant Viscosities” tables, and any associated footnotes. Consult your Cat dealer if additional information is needed.

NOTICE

Not following the recommendations found in this manual can lead to reduced performance and compartment failure.

Engine Oil

Cat oils have been developed and tested in order to provide the full performance and life that has been designed and built into Cat engines.

Cat DEO-ULS multigrade and Cat DEO multigrade oils are formulated with the correct amounts of detergents, dispersants, and alkalinity in order to provide superior performance in Cat diesel engines where recommended for use.

Note: SAE 10W-30 is the preferred viscosity grade for the 3116, 3126, C7, C-9, and C9 diesel engines when the ambient temperature is between -18°C (0°F) and 40°C (104°F).
### Table 24

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compartment or System</th>
<th>Oil Type and Performance Requirements</th>
<th>Oil Viscosities</th>
<th>°C</th>
<th>°F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine Crankcase</td>
<td>Cat DEO-ULS Cold Weather</td>
<td>SAE 0W-40</td>
<td>−40</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cat DEO-ULS</td>
<td>SAE 10W-30</td>
<td>−18</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cat DEO-ULS</td>
<td>SAE 15W-40</td>
<td>−9.5</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When fuels of sulfur level of 0.1 percent (1000 ppm) or higher are used, Cat DEO-ULS may be used if S-O-S oil analysis program is followed. Base the oil change interval on the oil analysis.

### Hydraulic Systems

Refer to the “Lubricant Information” section in the latest revision of the Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" for detailed information. This manual may be found on the Web at Safety.Cat.com.

The following are the preferred oils for use in most Cat machine hydraulic systems:

- Cat HYDO Advanced 10 SAE 10W
- Cat HYDO Advanced 30 SAE 30W
- Cat BIO HYDO Advanced

**Cat HYDO Advanced fluids have a 50% increase in the standard oil drain interval** for machine hydraulic systems (3000 hours versus 2000 hours) over second and third choice oils when you follow the maintenance interval schedule for oil filter changes and for oil sampling that is stated in the Operation and Maintenance Manual for your particular machine. 6000 hour oil drain intervals are possible when using S-O-S Services oil analysis. Consult your Cat dealer for details. When switching to Cat HYDO Advanced fluids, cross contamination with the previous oil should be kept to less than 10%.

**Second choice** oils are listed below.

- Cat MTO
- Cat DEO
- Cat DEO-ULS
- Cat TDTO
- Cat TDTO Cold Weather
- Cat TDTO-TMS

- Cat DEO-ULS SYN
- Cat DEO SYN
- Cat DEO-ULS Cold Weather
Table 25

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compartment or System</th>
<th>Oil Type and Performance Requirements</th>
<th>Oil Viscosities</th>
<th>°C</th>
<th>°F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Min</td>
<td>Max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydraulic System</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cat HYDO Advanced 10</td>
<td>SAE 10W</td>
<td>−20</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>−4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cat TDTO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cat HYDO Advanced 30</td>
<td>SAE 30</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cat TDTO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cat BIO HYDO Advanced</td>
<td>&quot;ISO 46&quot; Multi-Grade</td>
<td>−30</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>−22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cat MTO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cat DEO-ULS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cat DEO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cat DEO-UlS</td>
<td>SAE10W-30</td>
<td>−20</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>−4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cat DEO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cat DEO-UlS</td>
<td>SAE15W-40</td>
<td>−15</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cat TDTO-TMS</td>
<td>Multi-Grade</td>
<td>−15</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cat DEO-UlS Cold Weather</td>
<td>SAE0W-40</td>
<td>−40</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>−40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cat TDTO Cold Weather</td>
<td>SAE 0W-20</td>
<td>−40</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>−40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Drive Train Components

Refer to the “Lubricant Information” section in the latest revision of the Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations” for detailed information. This manual may be found on the Web at Safety.Cat.com.

When you are operating the machine in temperatures below −20°C (−4°F), refer to Special Publication, SEBU5898, “Cold Weather Recommendations”. This publication is available from your Cat dealer.

Table 26

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compartment or System</th>
<th>Oil Type and Performance Requirements</th>
<th>Oil Viscosities</th>
<th>°C</th>
<th>°F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Min</td>
<td>Max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track Idlers and Track Rollers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cat DEO-UlS Cold Weather</td>
<td>SAE 0W-40</td>
<td>−40</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>−40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cat DEO-UlS Cat DEO</td>
<td>SAE 10W-30</td>
<td>−18</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cat DEO-UlS Cat DEO</td>
<td>SAE 15W-40</td>
<td>−9.5</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final Drive</td>
<td>Caterpillar Synthetic GO(1)(2)</td>
<td>SAE 75W-140</td>
<td>−30</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) Cat Synthetic GO is the preferred oil for the final drive. If Cat Synthetic GO is not available, Cat GO, or API GL-5 grade oil may be substituted.
(2) Cat GO (Gear Oil) is available in SAE 80W-90 and SAE 85W-140 viscosity grades.
Special Lubricants

Grease

In order to use a non-Cat grease, the supplier must certify that the lubricant is compatible with Cat grease.

Each pin joint should be flushed with the new grease. Ensure that all old grease is removed. Failure to meet this requirement may lead to failure of a pin joint.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compartment or System</th>
<th>Grease Type</th>
<th>NLGI Grade</th>
<th>°C</th>
<th>°F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>External Lubrication Points</td>
<td>Cat Advanced 3Moly</td>
<td>NLGI Grade 2</td>
<td>−20</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External Lubrication Points</td>
<td>Cat Ultra 5Moly</td>
<td>NLGI Grade 2</td>
<td>−20</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External Lubrication Points</td>
<td>Cat Arctic Platinum</td>
<td>NLGI Grade 0</td>
<td>−50</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External Lubrication Points, Track Roller Frame Recoil Spring</td>
<td>Cat Desert Gold</td>
<td>NLGI Grade 2</td>
<td>−20</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Diesel Fuel Recommendations

Diesel fuel must meet “Caterpillar Specification for Distillate Fuel” and the latest versions of “ASTM D975” or “EN 590” in order to ensure optimum engine performance. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations” for the latest fuel information and for Cat fuel specification. This manual may be found on the Web at Safety.Cat.com.

The preferred fuels are distillate fuels. These fuels are commonly called diesel fuel, furnace oil, gas oil, or kerosene. These fuels must meet the “Caterpillar Specification for Distillate Diesel Fuel for Off-Highway Diesel Engines”. Diesel Fuels that meet the Caterpillar specification will help provide maximum engine service life and performance.

Misfueling with fuels of high sulfur level can have the following negative effects:

- Reduce engine efficiency and durability
- Increase the wear
- Increase the corrosion
- Increase the deposits
- Lower fuel economy
- Shorten the time period between oil drain intervals (more frequent oil drain intervals)
- Increase overall operating costs
- Negatively impact engine emissions

Failures that result from the use of improper fuels are not Caterpillar factory defects. Therefore the cost of repairs would not be covered by a Caterpillar warranty.

Caterpillar does not require the use of ULSD in off road and machine applications that are not Tier 4/Stage IIIB certified engines. ULSD is not required in engines that are not equipped with after treatment devices.

Follow operating instructions and fuel tank inlet labels, if available, in order to ensure that the correct fuels are used.

Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations” for more details about fuels and lubricants. This manual may be found on the Web at Safety.Cat.com.
Fuel Additives

Cat Diesel Fuel Conditioner and Cat Fuel System Cleaner are available for use when needed. These products are applicable to diesel and biodiesel fuels. Consult your Cat dealer for availability.

Biodiesel

Biodiesel is a fuel that can be made from various renewable resources that include vegetable oils, animal fat, and waste cooking oil. Soybean oil and rapeseed oil are the primary vegetable oil sources. In order to use any of these oils or fats as fuel, the oils or fats are chemically processed (esterified). The water and contaminants are removed.

U.S. distillate diesel fuel specification “ASTM D975-09a” includes up to B5 (5 percent) biodiesel. Currently, any diesel fuel in the U.S. may contain up to B5 biodiesel fuel.

European distillate diesel fuel specification “EN 590” includes up to B5 (5 percent) and in some regions up to B7 (7 percent) biodiesel. Any diesel fuel in Europe may contain up to B5 or in some regions up to B7 biodiesel fuel.

Note: Up to B20 biodiesel blend level is acceptable for use in Cat machine engines.

When biodiesel fuel is used, certain guidelines must be followed. Biodiesel fuel can influence the engine oil, aftertreatment devices, non-metallic, fuel system components, and others. Biodiesel fuel has limited storage life and has limited oxidation stability. Follow the guidelines and requirements for engines that are seasonally operated and for standby power generation engines.

In order to reduce the risks associated with the use of biodiesel, the final biodiesel blend and the biodiesel fuel used must meet specific blending requirements.

All the guidelines and requirements are provided in the latest revision of Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations”. This manual may be found on the Web at Safety.Cat.com.

Coolant Information

The information provided in this "Coolant Recommendation" section should be used with the "Lubricants Information" provided in the latest revision of Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations". This manual may be found on the Web at Safety.Cat.com.

The following two types of coolants may be used in Cat diesel engines:

Preferred – Cat ELC (Extended Life Coolant)

Acceptable – Cat DEAC (Diesel Engine Antifreeze/Coolant)

NOTICE

Never use water alone as a coolant. Water alone is corrosive at engine operating temperatures. In addition, water alone does not provide adequate protection against boiling or freezing.

Capacities (Refill)

SMCS Code: 7560

Table 28

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Approximate Refill Capacities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compartiment or System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Crankcase 3044</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydraulic Tank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooling System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Tank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final Drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Window Washer Fluid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) The amount includes 1L in the filter.
(2) The amount includes 0.26G in the filter.

Table 29

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Track Roller Frame Approximate Refill Capacities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compartiment or System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track Roller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idler - Single Flange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idler - Dual Flange</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

S·O·S Information

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000; 7542-008

S·O·S Services is a highly recommended process for Cat customers to use in order to minimize owning and operating cost. Customers provide oil samples, coolant samples, and other machine information. The dealer uses the data in order to provide the customer with recommendations for management of the equipment. In addition, S·O·S Services can help determine the cause of an existing product problem.
Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluid Recommendations” for detailed information concerning S·O·S Services.

Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Maintenance Interval Schedule” for a specific sampling location and a service hour maintenance interval.

Consult your Cat dealer for complete information and assistance in establishing an S·O·S program for your equipment.
Maintenance Support

Service Interval Chart

SMCS Code: 7000

Refer to the following service interval charts and service intervals for additional maintenance information.

279C Service Interval Chart
289C and 299C Service Interval Chart

Service Intervals

**Coolant additive** – Add the extender to the extended life coolant after every 6000 service hours or every 3 years.

**Coolant level (radiator)** – Check the coolant level in the radiator at the sight gauge after every ten service hours or at the end of each day.

**Coolant level (reservoir)** – Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir after every ten service hours or at the end of each day.

**Cooling system coolant** – Change the ELC (Extended Life Coolant) after every 12,000 hours or every 6 years.

**Engine air filter primary element** – Clean the primary air filter element or replace the primary air filter element. The alert indicator for the air filter indicates when servicing is necessary.
Engine air filter secondary element – Replace the secondary air filter element with every third change of the primary air filter element or replace the secondary air filter element when it is necessary.

Engine oil level check – Check the engine oil level after every ten service hours or at the end of each day.

Engine oil – Change the engine oil after every 500 service hours or every year.

Engine oil filter – Change the filter after every 500 service hours or every three months.

Final Drive oil – Check the final drive oil after every 250 service hours. Change the final drive oil after the initial 250 service hours. Change the final drive oil after every 500 service hours.

Fuel system water separator – Drain the water separator after every ten service hours or at the end of each day.

Fuel System Filter/Water Separator Element – Replace the filter after every 500 service hours or every three months.

Grease zerk – Lubricate the designated locations after every ten service hours or at the end of each day.

Hydraulic oil filter – Change the filter after every 500 service hours or every three months.

Hydraulic oil level check – Check the hydraulic oil level at the sight gauge after every ten service hours or at the end of each day.

Hydraulic oil – Change the hydraulic oil after every 2000 service hours or every year.

Welding on Machines and Engines with Electronic Controls

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Do not weld on any protective structure. If it is necessary to repair a protective structure, contact your Caterpillar dealer.

Proper welding procedures are necessary in order to avoid damage to the electronic controls and to the bearings. When possible, remove the component that must be welded from the machine or the engine and then weld the component. If you must weld near an electronic control on the machine or the engine, temporarily remove the electronic control in order to prevent heat related damage. The following steps should be followed in order to weld on a machine or an engine with electronic controls.

1. Turn off the engine. Place the engine start switch in the OFF position.

2. If equipped, turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position. If there is no battery disconnect switch, remove the negative battery cable at the battery.

NOTICE

Do NOT use electrical components (ECM or sensors) or electronic component grounding points for grounding the welder.

3. Clamp the ground cable from the welder to the component that will be welded. Place the clamp as close as possible to the weld. Make sure that the electrical path from the ground cable to the component does not go through any bearing. Use this procedure in order to reduce the possibility of damage to the following components:

   • Bearings of the drive train
   • Hydraulic components
   • Electrical components
   • Other components of the machine

4. Protect any wiring harnesses and components from the debris and the spatter which is created from welding.

5. Use standard welding procedures in order to weld the materials together.
## Maintenance Interval Schedule

**SMCS Code:** 7000

Ensure that all safety information, warnings, and instructions are read and understood before any operation or any maintenance procedures are performed.

The user is responsible for the performance of maintenance. All adjustments, the use of proper lubricants, fluids, filters, and the replacement of components due to normal wear and aging are included. Failure to adhere to proper maintenance intervals and procedures may result in diminished performance of the product and/or accelerated wear of components.

Use mileage, fuel consumption, service hours, or calendar time, WHICH EVER OCCURS FIRST, in order to determine the maintenance intervals. Products that operate in severe operating conditions may require more frequent maintenance. Refer to the maintenance procedure for any other exceptions that may change the maintenance intervals.

**Note:** The aftertreatment system can be expected to function properly for the useful life of the engine (emissions durability period), as defined by regulation. All prescribed maintenance requirements must be followed.

**Note:** Before each consecutive interval is performed, all maintenance from the previous interval must be performed.

**Note:** If Cat HYDO Advanced hydraulic oils are used, the hydraulic oil change interval is extended to 3000 hours. S-O-S services may extend the oil change interval. Failure to adhere to proper maintenance intervals and procedures may result in diminished performance of the product and/or accelerated wear of components.

### When Required

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aftercooler Core - Inspect/Clean</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aftercooler Intake Screen - Clean</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Conditioner Condenser - Clean</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery or Battery Cable - Inspect/Replace</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blade Frame - Adjust</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bucket Cutting Edges - Inspect/Replace</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bucket Tips - Inspect/Replace</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cab Air Filter - Clean/Replace</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cab Interior - Clean</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Air Filter Primary Element - Clean/Replace</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Air Filter Secondary Element - Replace</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Compartment - Inspect/Clean</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel System Priming Pump - Operate</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Tank Cap - Clean</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Tank Water and Sediment - Drain</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuses - Replace</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower Machine Frame - Clean</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oil Filter - Inspect</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiator Core - Clean</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprocket - Inspect</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track - Remove/Replace</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Window Washer Reservoir - Fill</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Window Wiper - Inspect/Replace</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows - Clean</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Cleaner Dust Valve - Clean/Inspect</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axle Bearings - Lubricate</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup Alarm - Test</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooling System Level - Check</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Oil Level - Check</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equipment Lowering Control Valve - Check</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel System Primary Filter (Water Separator) - Drain</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lift Arm and Cylinder Linkage - Lubricate</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quick Coupler - Clean/Inspect</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat Belt - Inspect</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tilt Cylinder Bearings and Bucket Linkage Bearings - Lubricate</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track - Inspect/Adjust</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track Roller and Idler - Inspect/Replace</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work Tool - Lubricate</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work Tool Mounting Bracket - Inspect</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final Drive Oil - Change</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final Drive Oil Level - Check</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belts - Inspect/Adjust/Replace</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooling System Coolant Sample (Level 1) - Obtain</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final Drive Oil - Change</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydraulic System Oil Sample - Obtain</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel System Primary Filter (Water Separator) - Element - Replace</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydraulic System Oil Filter - Replace</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Oil and Filter - Change</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydraulic Tank Breather - Replace</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Oil Valve Lash - Check</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Every 1000 Service Hours or 6 Months**
Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS) and Falling Object Protective Structure (FOPS) - Inspect ... 167

**Every 2000 Service Hours**
Refrigerant Dryer - Replace .......................... 166

**Every 2000 Service Hours or 1 Year**
Fuel Injection Timing - Check .......................... 152
Hydraulic System Oil - Change .......................... 158

**Every Year**
Cooling System Coolant Sample (Level 2) - Obtain ......................................................... 142

**Every 3000 Service Hours or 2 Years**
Cooling System Water Temperature Regulator - Replace ......................................................... 143

**Every 3 Years**
Seat Belt - Replace ...................................... 168

**Every 6000 Service Hours or 3 Years**
Cooling System Coolant Extender (ELC) - Add ... 140

**Every 12 000 Service Hours or 6 Years**
Cooling System Coolant (ELC) - Change .......... 138
Aftercooler Core - Inspect/Clean

**SMCS Code:** 1064-571; 1064-571-Z3

### Inspect

**Note:** Adjust the frequency of inspection according to the effects of the operating environment. Clean the aftercooler core when you clean the radiator core.

The aftercooler is located behind the cab and in front of the engine.

1. Stop the engine.
2. Clean the grill before you access the aftercooler core.
3. Remove the pin (2) that holds the grill (1) and lift the grill.

**Note:** If parts of the aftercooler system may appear to be damaged or if parts of the aftercooler system are repaired, a leak test is highly recommended. Consult your Caterpillar dealer for the most current information about the aftercooler.

Inspect the fins and tubes of the aftercooler for damage. Some fins and tubes may be worn from abrasive material that has passed through the aftercooler cores. Bent fins may be opened with a "comb".

Inspect these items for good condition: welds, mounting brackets, air lines, connections, clamps, and seals. Make repairs, if necessary.

### Clean

For air-to-air aftercoolers, use the same methods that are used for cleaning radiators.

**WARNING**

Personal injury can result from air pressure.

**Personal injury can result without following proper procedure. When using pressure air, wear a protective face shield and protective clothing.**

**Maximum air pressure at the nozzle must be less than 205 kPa (30 psi) for cleaning purposes.**

**NOTICE**

When you are using compressed air or high pressure water to clean the radiator fins, ensure that the air or water is directed parallel to the fins. If the compressed air or high pressure water is not directed parallel to the radiator fins, the radiator fins could be bent or damaged.

Pressurized air is the preferred method for removing loose debris. Hold the nozzle approximately 6 mm (0.25 inch) away from the fins. Slowly move the air nozzle in a direction that is parallel with the tubes. The air nozzle should point in the opposite direction of the flow of the fan. This will remove debris that is between the tubes.

Pressurized water may also be used for cleaning. The maximum water pressure for cleaning purposes must be less than 275 kPa (40 psi). Use pressurized water in order to soften mud.

Use a degreaser and steam for removal of oil and grease. Wash the core with detergent and hot water. Thoroughly rinse the core with clean water.

After cleaning, start the engine and accelerate the engine to high idle rpm. This will help in the removal of debris and drying of the core. Stop the engine. Use a light bulb behind the core in order to inspect the core for cleanliness. Repeat the cleaning, if necessary.

**Note:** Adjust the frequency of cleaning according to the effects of the operating environment. If there is an extreme amount of debris, you may need to remove the air conditioning condenser or the cover plate from the fan housing for the aftercooler.

Close the grill and replace the retaining pin.
Aftercooler Intake Screen - Clean

SMCS Code: 1063-070-Z3

WARNING

Personal injury can result from air pressure.

Personal injury can result without following proper procedure. When using pressure air, wear a protective face shield and protective clothing.

Maximum air pressure at the nozzle must be less than 205 kPa (30 psi) for cleaning purposes.

Note: Adjust the frequency of cleaning according to the effects of the operating environment.

Note: Pressurized air is the preferred method for removing loose debris. Pressurized water may also be used for cleaning. Use pressurized water in order to soften mud. Clean the screen from both sides. The maximum water pressure for cleaning purposes must be less than 275 kPa (40 psi).

1. Turn off the engine.

2. Access the screen from the right side of the machine. Hold the nozzle approximately 6 mm (0.25 inch) away from the screen. Ensure that the spray nozzle is past the electrical connections.

3. Access the screen from the left side of the machine. Hold the nozzle approximately 6 mm (0.25 inch) away from the screen.

4. If water is used to clean the screen, ensure that the screen is dry before the engine is started. If necessary, use compressed air to dry the screen.

Air Cleaner Dust Valve - Clean/Inspect

SMCS Code: 1051-571-VL

Service the air filter elements when the alert indicator for air filter restriction lights. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Alert Indicators” for information about the indicator.

1. Open the engine access door.

2. The air filter housing is located on the right side of the engine compartment.
3. Check the dust valve after every ten service hours or at the end of each day. Actuate the valve by squeezing the lips of the valve in order to remove any accumulated debris.

Air Conditioner Condenser - Clean (If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 1805-070

**WARNING**

Personal injury can result from air pressure.

Personal injury can result without following proper procedure. When using pressure air, wear a protective face shield and protective clothing.

Maximum air pressure at the nozzle must be less than 205 kPa (30 psi) for cleaning purposes.

246C, 256C, 262C, 277C, 287C, 279C, and 289C

The air conditioner condenser is located behind the engine on the frame.

Open the engine access door.

Inspect the air conditioner condenser for the following conditions:

- Damaged fins
- Buildup of debris
- Plugged areas

Remove any debris. Clean the condenser with low pressure air or low pressure water. The maximum water pressure for cleaning purposes must be less than 275 kPa (40 psi).

272C, 297C, and 299C

The air conditioner condenser is attached to the side of the fan housing for the aftercooler.

1. Remove the 3 bolts that retain the condenser to the fan housing for the aftercooler.
2. Lift the core and remove the core from the retaining lip.
3. Clean the condenser core in the opposite direction of the air flow.
4. Reinstall the core in reverse order.
Axle Bearings - Lubricate

**SMCS Code:** 3282-086-BD

Apply lubricant to all grease fittings.

Repeat the process for the opposite side of the machine.

**Backup Alarm - Test**

**SMCS Code:** 7406-081

To prevent injury, make sure that no people are working on the machine or near the machine. To prevent injury, keep the machine under control at all times.

1. Get into the operator's seat. Fasten the seat belt and pull the armrests downward.

2. Start the engine.

3. Disengage the parking brake.

4. Move the joystick control to the REVERSE position.

   The backup alarm should sound immediately. The backup alarm should continue to sound until the joystick control is returned to the NEUTRAL position or to the FORWARD position.

**Battery or Battery Cable - Inspect/Replace**

**SMCS Code:** 1401-040; 1401-510; 1401-561; 1402-040; 1402-510

1. Turn the engine start switch to the OFF position. Turn all switches to the OFF position.

2. The battery is located on the left side of the machine under the cab. Raise the cab. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Cab Tilting" for information on raising the cab.

3. Disconnect the negative battery cable at the battery.

   **Note:** Do not allow the disconnected battery cable to contact the negative battery post.

4. Disconnect the negative battery cable from the frame in order to inspect the cable.

5. Disconnect the positive battery cable at the battery.

6. Perform the necessary repairs. Replace the cables or the battery, as needed.

7. Connect the positive battery cable at the battery.
8. Connect the negative battery cable to the frame of the machine.

9. Connect the negative battery cable at the battery.

10. Lower the cab. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Cab Tilting” for information on lowering the cab.

Recycle the Battery

Always recycle a battery. Never discard a battery.

Always return used batteries to one of the following locations:

- A battery supplier
- An authorized battery collection facility
- Recycling facility

Belts - Inspect/Adjust/Replace

**SMCS Code:** 1357-025; 1357-040; 1357-510

If a new belt is installed, check the belt adjustment after 30 minutes of operation. A belt is considered to be used after 30 minutes of operation.

Belts

1. Stop the engine in order to inspect the belt.

2. Open the engine access door. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Access Doors and Covers”.

3. Remove the four bolts (1) on the top of the guard. Loosen the two bolts (2) on the bottom of the guard.

4. Slide the guard upward from bottom bolts. Remove the guard for the V-belt.

5. Inspect the condition of the belt (3) and the adjustment of the belt. The belt should deflect 10 mm (0.39 inch) under a straight pull of 44 N (10 lb). This measurement should be taken between the alternator pulley and the crankshaft pulley.
Note: A 144-0235 Borroughs Belt Tension Gauge may be used to measure belt tension. This measurement should be taken between the alternator pulley and the crankshaft pulley. Refer to the following table for belt tension.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Belt Tension</th>
<th>Belt Tension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initial</td>
<td>Used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>534 ± 22 N (120 ± 5 lb)</td>
<td>400 ± 44 N (90 ± 10 lb)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Loosen the mounting bolt (4). Loosen the adjusting locknut (5).

7. Move the alternator until the correct tension is reached.

8. Tighten the adjusting locknut. Tighten the mounting bolt.

9. Recheck the belt deflection. If the amount of deflection is incorrect, repeat step 5 to step 8.

**Air Conditioner (if equipped)**

Note: If your machine is equipped with an air conditioner, use the same procedure and the same measurements for the belt tension.

1. Inspect the condition of the belt and the adjustment of the belt. The belt should deflect 10 mm (0.39 inch) under a straight pull of 44 N (10 lb). This measurement should be taken between the air conditioner compressor pulley and the crankshaft pulley.

2. Loosen the mounting bolt (6) for the air conditioner compressor. Loosen the adjusting locknut (7) for the air conditioner compressor.

3. Move the air conditioner compressor until the correct tension is reached.

Note: A hole (8) in the bracket has been provided in order to aid with the adjustment of the tension.

4. Tighten the adjusting locknut. Tighten the mounting bolt.

5. Recheck the belt deflection. If the amount of deflection is incorrect, repeat step 2 to step 4.

**Finish**

1. Apply thread lock compound to the threads on bolts (1).

2. Install the guard for the V-belt (9). Ensure that the guard is inserted between the mounting bracket (10) and the spreader plate (11) before you tighten the bolts (2). Tighten the bolts (2) to 15 ± 3 N·m (11 ± 2 lb ft).
3. Tighten the bolts (1) to 12 ± 3 N·m (9 ± 2 lb ft).

**Note:** Start all the bolts (1) in the holes before you start tightening the bolts. This helps align all the holes.

4. Close the engine access door.

---

Blade Frame - Adjust

**SMCS Code:** 6060-025-BG

**Height Adjustment**

Illustration 117

The height of the frame may be adjusted in order to compensate for the wear on the cutting edge. The front portion of the frame needs to be lowered as the cutting edge wears. Remove the bolts (2) and lower the frame (3). Install the bolts. This will keep the blade level with the ground and this will prevent the blade from digging into the ground.

**Note:** In order to properly adjust the blade, the work tool coupler needs to be vertical. The position of the pivot point of the blade is perpendicular to the ground. Follow this procedure in order to ensure that the cutting edge will remain flat on the ground during operation.
Trunnion Joint

Note: The trunnion is a dry joint. Adding grease to the trunnion simply attracts abrasive particles. The tightness of the joint should be monitored. Shims should be removed when the joint becomes too loose. This may be indicated by excessive movement in the blade.

Bucket Cutting Edges - Inspect/Replace

SMCS Code: 6801-040; 6801-510

WARNING
Personal injury or death can result from bucket falling.

Block the bucket before changing bucket cutting edges.

1. Lower the lift arms fully. Tilt back the bucket so that the bucket cutting edge is accessible.
2. Place blocks under the raised edge of the bucket.
3. Remove the bolts. Remove the cutting edge and the end bits.
4. Clean the contact surfaces.
5. Use the opposite side of the cutting edge, if this side is not worn.
6. Install a new cutting edge, if both edges are worn.
7. Install the bolts.
8. Remove the blocks that are under the bucket.
9. After a few hours of operation, check the bolts for proper torque.

Bucket Tips - Inspect/Replace

SMCS Code: 6805-040; 6805-510

WARNING
Personal injury or death can result from bucket falling.

Block the bucket before changing bucket cutting edges.

1. Lower the lift arms fully. Tilt back the bucket so that the bucket tips are accessible.
2. Place blocks under the raised edge of the bucket.
3. Remove the mounting bolts. Remove the bucket tips.
4. Clean the mounting surface.
5. Replace the bucket tips.
6. Install the bolts.
7. Remove the blocks that are under the bucket.
8. After a few hours of operation, check the bolts for proper torque.

**Cab Air Filter - Clean/Replace (If Equipped)**

**SMCS Code:** 7342-070; 7342-510

**Fresh Air Filter**

*Note:* The cover for the cab air filter is located on the left hand side of the machine behind the cab.

1. Turn the thumb screw until the thumb screw is free from the duct. Lift up on the cover and remove the cover.

Illustration 120

2. Remove the air filter element from the duct and clean the filter element with low pressure air (maximum 207 kPa (30 psi)). Direct the air flow up the pleats and down the pleats from the side of the filter opposite of the air flow. Replace the element if the element is damaged or if the element seal is damaged. Replace the element if the air conditioner performance is low.

*Note:* Do not use water for cleaning the filter.

3. Install the element. Replace the cover and tighten the thumb screw.

**Recirculation Filter**

1. Turn the thumb screws until the thumb screws are free from the duct. Remove the cover.

2. Remove the air filter element from the duct and clean the filter element with low pressure air (maximum 207 kPa (30 psi)). Direct the air flow up the pleats and down the pleats from the side of the filter opposite of the air flow. Replace the element if the element is damaged or if the element seal is damaged. Replace the element if the air conditioner performance is low.

*Note:* Do not use water for cleaning the filter.

3. Install the element. Replace the cover and tighten the thumb screws.

**Cab Interior - Clean**

**SMCS Code:** 7301-070

The floor mat is removable. The floor mat has sides in order to help retain the material.
Floor mat in the cab

The floor mat does not protect the foot pedal and the pedal linkage. Debris may accumulate around the foot pedal. The foot pedal must be kept clear of excessive dirt and debris in order to ensure proper activation of the pedal. Debris must be cleaned from the area around the pedal. This can be done after you remove the floor mat.

The drain on the left side of the machine

You can wash the floor of the cab with water. There is a drain in the front, left corner of the floor of the cab.

Cooling System Coolant (ELC) - Change

SMCS Code: 1395-044-NL

Pressurized system: Hot coolant can cause serious burn. To open cap, stop engine, wait until radiator is cool. Then loosen cap slowly to relieve the pressure.

NOTICE

Mixing ELC with other products will reduce the effectiveness of the coolant.

This could result in damage to cooling system components.

If Caterpillar products are not available and commercial products must be used, make sure they have passed the Caterpillar EC-1 specification for pre-mixed or concentrate coolants and Caterpillar Extender.

Note: The machine was shipped from the factory with Extended Life Coolant (ELC) in the cooling system.

For information about the addition of Extender to your cooling system, see the Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Cooling System Coolant (ELC) Extender - Add” or consult your Caterpillar dealer.

Drain the coolant whenever the coolant is dirty or whenever the coolant is foaming.

The radiator cap is located under the radiator guard on the top of the engine compartment.

Allow the machine to cool before you change the coolant.

1. Open the engine access door. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Access Doors and Covers”.

2. Raise the radiator guard. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Radiator Tilting”.

Note: The radiator cap is located on the right side of the radiator.
3. Slowly loosen the radiator cap (2) in order to relieve system pressure. Remove the radiator cap.

4. Locate the drain hose for the coolant system. The drain hose is attached to the drain valve that is shown in illustration 125.

5. Remove the access panel under the rear of the machine. Pull the drain hose through the access hole.

6. Open the drain and allow the coolant to drain into a suitable container.

7. Close the drain.

8. Push the hose back into the engine compartment. Replace the access panel.


10. Add the coolant solution directly to the radiator. Do not use the coolant overflow reservoir as a filler for the coolant. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Capacities - (Refill)". Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations".

Note: Premix the coolant solution before filling the cooling system. The coolant solution should contain 50 percent coolant and 50 percent distilled water.

Note: Add the coolant solution at a maximum rate of five liters per minute. This will reduce the chance of trapping air inside the engine block. A large amount of trapped air can cause localized heating to occur upon start-up. Localized heating may result in engine damage, which may lead to failure of the engine.
11. Start the engine. Run the engine without the radiator cap until the thermostat opens and the coolant level stabilizes. If necessary, add coolant.

**Note:** The sight gauge for the coolant level is located on the left side of the radiator.

12. Check the coolant level in the sight gauge on the radiator. Maintain the coolant level to the top of the sight gauge with the radiator in the LOWERED position.

13. Stop the engine. Inspect the radiator cap and the gasket. Replace the cap if the cap or the gasket is damaged. Install the radiator cap.

14. Pull the radiator guard downward.

15. Close the engine access door.

---

**Cooling System Coolant Extender (ELC) - Add**

**SMCS Code:** 1352-544-NL

---

**WARNING**

Pressurized system: Hot coolant can cause serious burn. To open cap, stop engine, wait until radiator is cool. Then loosen cap slowly to relieve the pressure.

When a Caterpillar Extended Life Coolant is used, an extender must be added to the cooling system periodically.

1. Open the engine access door. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Access Doors and Covers”.

2. Tilt the radiator guard upward. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Radiator Tilting”.

---

3. Slowly loosen the radiator cap in order to relieve system pressure. Remove the radiator cap.

---

4. If necessary, drain enough coolant from the radiator in order to allow the addition of the coolant additive.

5. Add 0.17 L (0.18 qt) of cooling system additive.
6. Inspect the radiator cap and the gasket. If the cap or the gasket is damaged, replace the cap. Install the radiator cap.

**Note**: The sight gauge for the coolant is located on the left side of the radiator on machines that are equipped with the 3044 engine.

7. Check the coolant level in the sight gauge on the radiator. Maintain the coolant level to the top of the sight gauge with the radiator in the LOWERED position.

8. Add the extender directly to the radiator. Do not use the coolant overflow reservoir as a filler for the extender.

9. Tilt the radiator guard downward.

10. Close the engine access door.

For additional information on the addition of extender, see Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations”.

---

**Cooling System Coolant Sample (Level 1) - Obtain**

**SMCS Code**: 1350-008; 1395-008; 7542

---

**NOTICE**

Always use a designated pump for oil sampling, and use a separate designated pump for coolant sampling. Using the same pump for both types of samples may contaminate the samples that are being drawn. This contaminate may cause a false analysis and an incorrect interpretation that could lead to concerns by both dealers and customers.

**Note**: Level 1 results may indicate a need for Level 2 Analysis.

---

**WARNING**

Pressurized system: Hot coolant can cause serious burn. To open cap, stop engine, wait until radiator is cool. Then loosen cap slowly to relieve the pressure.

Obtain the sample of the coolant from the radiator. When the system is cool, slowly remove the radiator cap (2).

**Note**: Do not take the sample from the Coolant Overflow Reservoir.

Obtain the sample of the coolant as close as possible to the recommended sampling interval. In order to receive the full effect of S·O·S analysis, you must establish a consistent trend of data. In order to establish a pertinent history of data, perform consistent samplings that are evenly spaced. Supplies for collecting samples can be obtained from your Caterpillar dealer.

Use the following guidelines for proper sampling of the coolant:

- Keep the unused sampling bottles stored in plastic bags.
- Keep the lids on empty sampling bottles until you are ready to collect the sample.
Complete the information on the label for the sampling bottle before you begin to take the samples.

Use a designated pump to collect the sample in order to avoid contamination.

Obtain coolant samples directly from the coolant tank. You should not obtain the samples from any other location.

Place the sample in the mailing tube immediately after obtaining the sample in order to avoid contamination.

Never collect samples from the drain for a system. Submit the sample for Level 1 analysis.

For additional information about coolant analysis, see Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" or consult your Caterpillar dealer.

**Cooling System Coolant Sample (Level 2) - Obtain**

**SMCS Code:** 1350-008; 1395-008; 7542

**NOTICE**

Always use a designated pump for oil sampling, and use a separate designated pump for coolant sampling. Using the same pump for both types of samples may contaminate the samples that are being drawn. This contaminate may cause a false analysis and an incorrect interpretation that could lead to concerns by both dealers and customers.

---

Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Access Doors and Covers" for the location of the service points.

**WARNING**

Pressurized system: Hot coolant can cause serious burn. To open cap, stop engine, wait until radiator is cool. Then loosen cap slowly to relieve the pressure.

Obtain the sample of the coolant from the radiator. When the system is cool, slowly remove the radiator cap (2).

**Note:** Do not take the sample from the Coolant Overflow Reservoir.

Obtain the sample of the coolant as close as possible to the recommended sampling interval. Supplies for collecting samples can be obtained from your Caterpillar dealer.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Cooling System Coolant Sample (Level 1) - Obtain" for the guidelines for proper sampling of the coolant.

Submit the sample for Level 2 analysis.

For additional information about coolant analysis, see Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" or consult your Caterpillar dealer.
**Cooling System Level - Check**

**SMCS Code:** 1350-040-HX; 1350-535-FLV; 1382-070; 1382-510

---

**WARNING**

Pressurized system: Hot coolant can cause serious burn. To open cap, stop engine, wait until radiator is cool. Then loosen cap slowly to relieve the pressure.

1. Open the engine access door. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Access Doors and Covers”.

2. Tilt the radiator guard upward.

3. Check the coolant level in the sight gauge (1) on the radiator. Maintain the coolant level to the top of the sight gauge with the radiator in the LOWERED position. If you need to add coolant, add the coolant directly to the radiator. Remove the radiator cap (2) slowly in order to relieve system pressure.

**Note:** The radiator cap is located on the right side of the radiator. Inspect the cooling system hoses for any leaks, cracks, or signs of deterioration. Replace any damaged hoses.

4. Inspect the radiator cap and the gasket. Replace the cap if the cap or the gasket is damaged. Install the radiator cap.

5. Tilt the radiator guard downward.

6. The coolant overflow reservoir is located on the rear door. Maintain the coolant level in the coolant overflow reservoir between the “MIN” and “MAX” lines.

7. Close the engine access door.

---

**Cooling System Water Temperature Regulator - Replace**

**SMCS Code:** 1355-510; 1393-010

Replace the thermostat on a regular basis in order to reduce the chance of unscheduled downtime and of problems with the cooling system. Failure to replace the engine's thermostat on a regularly scheduled basis could cause severe engine damage.

The thermostat should be replaced after the cooling system has been cleaned. Replace the thermostat while the cooling system is completely drained or while the cooling system coolant is drained to a level that is below the thermostat housing.

Caterpillar engines incorporate a shunt design cooling system. It is mandatory to always operate the engine with a thermostat.

1. Open the engine access door. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Access Doors and Covers”.

2. Drain the coolant from the machine. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Cooling System Coolant (ELC) - Change” for the procedure to drain the cooling system.
3. Loosen the hose clamp (1) and remove the hose from the thermostat housing assembly (2).

4. Remove the two bolts (3) from the thermostat housing assembly. Remove the thermostat housing assembly.

5. Remove the seal and the thermostat from the thermostat housing assembly.

6. Install a new thermostat and a new seal. Install the thermostat housing assembly on the engine cylinder head.

7. Install the hose. Tighten the hose clamp.


9. Close the engine access door.

**Engine Air Filter Primary Element - Clean/Replace**

**SMCS Code:** 1054-070-PY; 1054-510-PY

**NOTICE**

Never service the air cleaner when the engine is running, to avoid engine damage.

**NOTICE**

Caterpillar recommends certified air filter cleaning services that are available at Caterpillar dealers. The Caterpillar cleaning process uses proven procedures to assure consistent quality and sufficient filter life.

Observe the following guidelines if you attempt to clean the filter element:

Do not tap or strike the filter element in order to remove dust.

Do not wash the filter element.

Use low pressure compressed air in order to remove the dust from the filter element. Air pressure must not exceed 207 kPa (30 psi). Direct the air flow up the pleats and down the pleats from the inside of the filter element. Take extreme care in order to avoid damage to the pleats.

Do not use air filters with damaged pleats, gaskets, or seals. Dirt entering the engine will cause damage to engine components.

Service the air filter elements when the alert indicator for air filter restriction lights. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Alert Indicators” for information about the indicator.
Clean

The primary filter element can be used up to three times if the element is properly cleaned and if the element is properly inspected. When the primary filter element is cleaned, check for rips or tears in the filter material. The primary filter element should be replaced at least one time per year. This replacement should be performed regardless of the number of cleanings.

1. Open the engine access door.

2. The air filter housing is located on the right side of the engine compartment.

3. Unlatch the air cleaner housing cover (1). Rotate the cover counterclockwise and remove the cover.

4. Remove the primary filter element (2).

5. If it is appropriate, clean the primary filter element. Use air pressure to clean the primary filter elements. Pressurized air will not remove deposits of carbon and oil. Use filtered, dry air with a maximum pressure of 207 kPa (30 psi).

Note: When the primary filter elements are cleaned, always begin with the inside in order to force dirt particles toward the outside. Aim the hose so that the air flows inside the element along the length of the filter in order to help prevent damage to the paper pleats. Do not aim the stream of air directly at the primary filter element.

6. Inspect the cleaned, dry primary air filter element. Use a 60 watt blue light in a dark room or in a similar facility. Place the blue light in the primary air filter element. Rotate the primary air filter element. Inspect the primary air filter element for tears and/or holes. Inspect the primary air filter element for light that may show through the filter material. If it is necessary in order to confirm the result, compare the primary air filter element to a new primary air filter element that has the same part number.

7. Clean the inside of the air cleaner housing with a damp cloth. Do not use compressed air to clean the housing.

8. Install the primary filter element into the filter housing.

9. Install the cover for the filter housing.

10. Rotate the cover clockwise and latch the cover.

Note: Make sure that the cover is properly positioned. The arrows on the air filter cover should point upward when the cover is in the locked position.

11. Close the engine access door.

12. Start the engine. The alert indicator for air filter restriction should turn off. If the alert indicator continues to light, replace the secondary air filter. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Engine Air Filter Secondary Element - Replace”.

Replace

The primary filter element should be replaced at least one time per year. You can clean the primary filter up to three times.

1. Open the engine access door.

2. The air filter housing is located on the right side of the engine compartment.
3. Unlatch the air cleaner housing cover (1). Rotate the cover counterclockwise and remove the cover.

4. Remove the primary filter element (2).

5. Clean the inside of the air cleaner housing with a damp cloth. Do not use compressed air to clean the housing.

6. Install a new primary filter element into the filter housing.

7. Install the cover for the filter housing.

8. Rotate the cover clockwise and latch the cover.

Note: Make sure that the cover is properly positioned. The arrows on the air filter cover should point upward when the cover is in the locked position.

9. Close the engine access door.

10. Start the engine. The alert indicator for air filter restriction should turn off. If the alert indicator continues to light, replace the secondary air filter. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Engine Air Filter Secondary Element - Replace”.

**Engine Air Filter Secondary Element - Replace**

**SMCS Code:** 1054-510-SE

**NOTICE**

Always replace the secondary filter element. Never attempt to reuse the secondary filter element by cleaning the element.

When the primary filter element is cleaned for the third time, the secondary filter element should be replaced.

The secondary filter element should also be replaced if the restricted Air Filter indicator comes on after the installation of a clean primary filter element or if the exhaust smoke is still black.

1. Open the engine access door.

2. The air filter housing is located on the right side of the engine compartment.

3. Unlatch the air cleaner housing cover (1). Rotate the cover counterclockwise and remove the cover.

4. Remove the primary filter element (2).
5. Clean the inside of the air cleaner housing with a damp cloth. Do not use compressed air to clean the housing.

6. Remove the secondary filter element.

7. Cover the air inlet opening.

8. Clean the inside of the air cleaner housing with a damp cloth, if necessary. Do not use compressed air to clean the housing.

9. Uncover the air inlet opening.

10. Install a new secondary element.

11. Install the primary element.

12. Install the cover for the filter housing.

Note: Make sure that the cover is properly positioned. The arrows on the air filter cover should point upward when the cover is in the locked position.

14. Close the engine access door.

**Engine Compartment - Inspect/Clean**

**SMCS Code:** 1000-040-CPA; 1000-070-CPA

Inspect the engine compartment for dirt buildup or debris. Remove any dirt or debris from the engine compartment.

1. Open the engine access door. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Access Doors and Covers”.

2. Remove any debris or dirt from the engine compartment. If necessary, remove the access panel in order to clean out the engine compartment.

Note: Use care when you clean the engine compartment. Damage to the machine may occur.

3. Install the access panel. Close the engine access door.
Engine Oil Level - Check

SMCS Code: 1348-535-FLV

NOTICE
Do not overfill the crankcase. Engine damage can result.

1. Stop the engine and allow the oil to drain back into the oil pan.

2. Open the engine access door. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Access Doors and Covers”.

3. Maintain the oil level between the “ADD” (1) mark and the “FULL” (2) mark on the dipstick.

4. If oil is necessary, tilt the radiator upward. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Radiator Tilting”.

5. Remove the oil filler cap (1) and add oil.

6. Clean the oil filler cap and install the oil filler cap.

7. Tilt the radiator downward.

8. Close the engine access door.

Engine Oil and Filter - Change

SMCS Code: 1308-510; 1348-044

NOTICE
Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, NENG2500, “Caterpillar Dealer Service Tool Catalog” for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Caterpillar products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

The normal oil change interval for the machine is Every 500 Service Hours or every year when the following conditions are met:

- Caterpillar filters are used.
- The altitude does not exceed 2300 m (7545 ft).
- Sulfur content in the fuel is between 0.05% and 0.50%.

An oil change interval of Every 250 Service Hours or every six months is required when the following conditions occur:

- The altitude exceeds 2300 m (7545 ft).
- Sulfur content in the fuel is between 0.50% and 1.00%.
An oil change interval of Every 125 Service Hours is required when the following condition occurs:

- Sulfur content in the fuel is above 1.00%.

Refer to the results of the S·O·S oil analysis in order to determine if the oil change interval should be decreased. Consult your Caterpillar Dealer for detailed information regarding the optimum oil change interval.

1. Open the engine access door. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Access Doors and Covers”.
2. Tilt the radiator upward. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Radiator Tilting”.

Note: The crankcase drain is located on the right side of the oil pan.

5. Apply a thin film of clean engine oil to the sealing surface of the new filter element.
6. Install a new engine oil filter hand tight until the seal of the engine oil filter contacts the base. Note the position of the index marks on the filter in relation to a fixed point on the filter base.

Note: There are rotation index marks on the engine oil filter that are spaced 90 degrees or 1/4 of a turn away from each other. When you tighten the engine oil filter, use the rotation index marks as a guide.
7. Tighten the filter according to the instructions that are printed on the filter. Use the index marks as a guide. For non-Caterpillar filters, use the instructions that are provided with the filter.

Note: You may need to use a Caterpillar strap wrench, or another suitable tool, in order to turn the filter to the amount that is required for final installation. Make sure that the installation tool does not damage the filter.
Engine Valve Lash - Check

SMCS Code: 1105-025

Refer to the Service Manual for the complete adjustment procedure for the engine valve lash.

A qualified mechanic should adjust the engine valve lash and the fuel injector timing because special tools and training are required.

Equipment Lowering Control Valve - Check

SMCS Code: 5147-MA

**WARNING**

Personal injury or death can result from a work tool falling.

Keep personnel away from the front of the machine when lowering the work tool.

Before lowering any equipment, clear the area around the equipment of all personnel.

1. Lower arms to the fully lowered position. Turn the keyswitch to the OFF position.

2. Slide the seat forward. Slide the left hand armrest forward.


9. Start the engine and allow the oil to warm. Check for leaks.

10. Stop the engine and allow the oil to drain back into the oil pan. Fill the crankcase to the “FULL” mark (2) on the dipstick. **Do not exceed the “FULL” mark on the dipstick.** Add oil or drain oil if it is necessary.

11. Tilt the radiator downward.

12. Close the engine access door.
3. Pull up on the red handle in order to fully actuate the valve.

4. Push the red handle to the original position. Ensure that the handle is fully seated.

Final Drive Oil - Change

SMCS Code: 4050-044-OC

6. Add oil through the opening of the oil fill/drain plug (1) that is now at the top.

7. Fill the final drive to the bottom of the opening for the oil check plug (2). Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Lubricant Viscosities” and Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Capacities (Refill)”.

8. Install the two oil plugs. Tighten the oil plugs to a torque of 27 ± 1 N·m (20 ± 0.7 lb ft).

9. Perform Step 1 to Step 8 on the other final drive.

10. Completely remove any oil that has spilled.

11. Start the engine and allow the final drives to operate through several cycles.

12. Stop the engine.

13. Check the oil level.

14. Maintain the oil level to the bottom of the opening for the fill/drain plug (2).

Final Drive Oil Level - Check

SMCS Code: 4050-535-FLV

1. Position one final drive so that the oil fill/drain plug (1) is at the bottom.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “General Hazard Information” for information on containing fluid spillage.

2. Use an 8 mm (5/16 inch) allen wrench. Remove the oil plugs (1) and (2). Allow the oil to drain into a suitable container.

3. Check the drained oil for metal chips or for particles. If there are any chips or particles, consult your Caterpillar dealer.

Note: Dispose of drained fluids according to local regulations.

4. Clean the plugs and inspect the plugs. Replace a worn plug or a damaged plug.

5. Position the final drive so that the oil fill/drain plug (1) is at the top.
**Fuel Injection Timing - Check**

**SMCS Code:** 1251-531

**Note:** The correct fuel timing specification is found on the Engine Information Plate. Fuel timing specifications may vary for different engine applications and/or for different power ratings.

A qualified mechanic should adjust the fuel injection timing because special tools and training are required.

Refer to the Service Manual for the complete adjustment procedure for the fuel injection timing. Refer to your Caterpillar dealer for the complete adjustment procedure for the fuel injection timing.

---

**Fuel System Primary Filter (Water Separator) - Drain**

**SMCS Code:** 1263-543

**NOTICE**

Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, NENG2500, “Caterpillar Dealer Service Tool Catalog” for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Caterpillar products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

The fuel system water separator is located in the left side of the engine compartment.

1. Open the engine access door. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Access Doors and Covers”.

---

The Fuel Filter/Water Separator is located on the left side of the engine compartment.

2. Insert the drain hose (3) into a suitable container. Loosen the drain valve on the bottom of the water separator.
3. Tighten the drain valve by hand. Do not tighten the drain valve with a tool. Damage to the valve or to the seals may occur.

4. Close the engine access door.

5. Dispose of the water and sediment according to local regulations.

Fuel System Primary Filter (Water Separator) Element - Replace

SMCS Code: 1260-510-FQ; 1263-510-FQ

NOTICE
Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, NENG2500, “Caterpillar Dealer Service Tool Catalog” for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Caterpillar products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

Note: This unit has a dual purpose. The element serves as a water separator and a fuel filter.

1. Open the engine access door. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Access Doors and Covers”.

2. Open the drain on the fuel filter/water separator (3). Allow the water and fuel to drain into a suitable container.

3. Close the drain valve by hand. Do not tighten the drain valve with a tool. Damage to the valve or to the seals may occur.

4. Support the fuel filter/water separator and rotate the locking ring (1) counterclockwise. Remove the fuel filter/water separator.

5. Rotate the locking ring (2) counterclockwise. Remove the bowl assembly.

6. Clean the mounting base for the fuel filter/water separator.

7. Clean the bowl assembly for the fuel/water separator.

8. Install the bowl assembly onto the new fuel/water separator and rotate the locking ring clockwise.

9. Install the new fuel filter/water separator onto the mounting base. Rotate the locking ring clockwise in order to fasten the fuel filter/water separator to the mounting base.

10. Prime the fuel system in order to fill the fuel filter/water separator with fuel. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Fuel System Priming Pump - Operate”.

11. Close the engine access door.
Fuel System Priming Pump - Operate

SMCS Code: 1258-548

This machine is equipped with a fuel transfer pump that is electric. Two examples that may cause the fuel system to lose prime are listed here:

- The machine runs out of fuel.
- The Fuel System Filter/Water Separator Element is replaced.

Follow the steps below in order to prime the fuel system.

1. Ensure that the engine start switch is in the OFF position. Turn the engine start switch to the ON position.
   
   **Note:** Do not start the engine. This operation only starts the fuel pump. The pump will run approximately 1 minute.

2. The Primary Fuel Filter is located in the left side of the engine compartment.

3. Examine the clear bowl. The bowl must contain only fuel. If the bowl is not full of fuel, repeat Steps 1 and 2.

4. Attempt to start the engine. If the engine starts and the engine runs rough or the engine misfires, operate the engine at low idle until the engine runs smoothly.

   **Note:** If the engine fails to start or if the engine continues to misfire or smoke, stop the engine and repeat the procedure. If the problem persists after repeating the procedure, consult your Cat dealer.

   **Note:** Do not open any high pressure lines in order to bleed air from the fuel system.

Fuel Tank Water and Sediment - Drain

SMCS Code: 1273-543-M&S

**NOTICE**

Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, NENG2500, “Caterpillar Dealer Service Tool Catalog” for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Caterpillar products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

**Note:** Drain the water and the sediment from the fuel tank when the tank is almost empty.

1. Slowly remove the fuel tank cap in order to allow the tank to vent while you drain the tank.

Fuel Tank Cap - Clean

SMCS Code: 1273-070-Z2

1. Remove the fuel cap.
2. The fuel tank drain plug is located on the bottom of the fuel tank in the engine compartment on the right side of the machine. Remove the plug.

3. Allow the water and the sediment to drain into a suitable container.

4. Install the fuel tank drain plug.

Note: Apply 5P-3413 Pipe Sealant to the threads on the drain plug.

5. Install the fuel tank cap.

Fuses - Replace

SMCS Code: 1417-510; 1417; 7528

Fuses

Fuses – Fuses protect the electrical system from damage that is caused by overloaded circuits. Replace the fuse if the element separates. If the element of a new fuse separates, check the circuit. Repair the circuit, if necessary.

NOTICE
Replace the fuses with the same type and size only. Otherwise, electrical damage can result.

If it is necessary to replace fuses frequently, an electrical problem may exist. Contact your Caterpillar dealer.
The following is a list of the fuses in the panel:

1 – Spare

2 – Wiper

3 – Front Work Lights and Beacon

4 – Right Joystick

5 – 12 volt power socket

6 – Radio

7 – Solenoid for the Compressor

8 – Air Conditioner

9 – Left Joystick

10 – Cold Start

11 – Rear Work Lights

12 – Backup Alarm and Brake Lights

13 – HVAC Blower Fan

14 – Spare

15 – Headlights

16 – Hydraulic Solenoid

17 – Fuel Shutoff and Secondary Engine Shutoff

18 – Hydraulic Quick Coupler

19 – Hydraulic Solenoid

20 – Spare

Solenoids

21 – Auxiliary Electrical Control "AUX6(C1)"
Main Fuse

The main fuse (22) is located behind the battery (21) on the left side of the machine under the cab. This is a 105 amp fuse. You must disconnect the negative battery cable before you replace this fuse.

Fuse panel behind cab

There is an additional fuse panel behind the cab on the right side of the machine.
This panel has 6 fuses. In order to change these fuses, push up on the locking tab on the fuse cover. Pull the cover away from the back of the cab.

Hydraulic System Oil - Change

SMCS Code: 5095-044

Selection of the Oil Change Interval

Your machine may be able to use a 4000 hour interval for the hydraulic oil. The hydraulic oil is in the system that is not integral to the service brakes, the clutches, the final drives, or the differentials. The standard change interval is 2000 hours. The oil should be monitored during intervals of 500 hours. The extended 4000 hour interval can be used if the following criteria are met.

HYDO Advanced 10

Cat HYDO Advanced 10 is the preferred oil for use in most Caterpillar machine hydraulic and hydrostatic transmission systems when ambient temperature is between −20 °C (−4 °F) and 40 °C (104 °F). Cat HYDO Advanced 10 has an SAE viscosity grade of 10W. Cat HYDO Advanced 10 has a 50% increase in the standard oil drain interval (up to 3000 hours) for machine hydraulic systems over second and third choice oils when you follow the maintenance interval schedule for oil filter changes and for oil sampling that is stated in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. 6000 hour oil drain intervals are possible when using S·O·S Services oil analysis. When you switch to Cat HYDO Advanced 10, cross contamination with the previous oil should be kept to less than 10%. Consult your Cat dealer for details about the benefits from the improved performance designed into Cat HYDO Advanced 10.

Oil Filters

Caterpillar oil filters are recommended. The interval for changing the oil filter should be 500 hours.

Oil

The 6000 hour interval for changing the oil is specific to HYDO Advance 10.

The 4000 hour interval for changing the oil is for the following oil types.

- Caterpillar Hydraulic Oil (HYDO)
- Caterpillar Transmission and Drive Train Oil (TDTO)
- Caterpillar TDTO-TMS
- Caterpillar Diesel Engine Oil
• Caterpillar Biodegradable Hydraulic Oils (HEES)
• Caterpillar Multipurpose Tractor Oil (MTO)
• Heavy-duty diesel engine oils with a minimum zinc content of 900 ppm

If Caterpillar oils cannot be used, use heavy-duty oils with the following classification: Caterpillar ECF-1, API CG-4, API CF, and TO-4. These oils must have a minimum zinc additive of 0.09 percent (900 ppm).

**Note:** Industrial hydraulic oils are not recommended in Caterpillar hydraulic systems.

**Monitoring the Condition of the Oil**

The oil should be monitored during intervals of 500 hours. Caterpillar’s standard SOS Fluids Analysis or an equivalent oil sampling program should be used.

The current guidelines for cleanliness of the oil should be observed. Refer to “Measured Data”.

If an oil sampling program is not available, the standard 2000 oil change interval should be used.

**Measured Data**

The following information should be monitored through sampling of the oil:

• Significant changes in wear metals should be monitored. These metals include iron, copper, chromium, lead, aluminum, and tin.

• Significant changes in the following additives should be monitored: zinc, calcium, magnesium, and phosphorus.

• Contaminants should not be present. These contaminants include fuel and antifreeze. Water content should be .5 percent or less.

• The silicon level should not exceed 15 parts per million for new oil. The particle counts should be monitored.

• The recommended level of cleanliness for Caterpillar machines that are operated in the field is ISO 18/15 or cleaner. The cleanliness should be monitored by particle count analysis. The levels of contamination should not exceed the normal by more than two ISO codes. Action should be taken in order to determine the cause of the contamination. The system should be returned to the original levels of contamination.

• There should not be significant changes in sodium, silicon, copper, and potassium.

• The allowable level of oxidation is 40 percent (0.12 Abs units).

• The kinematic viscosity of 100 °C (212 °F) oil should not exceed a change of more than 2 cSt from new oil.

**Procedure for Changing the Hydraulic Oil**

**NOTICE**

Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, NENG2500, “Caterpillar Dealer Service Tool Catalog” for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Caterpillar products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

**Illustration 162**

**g00956818**

**Note:** This film is located near the hydraulic filler cap on machines that are filled with arctic oil.

Operate the machine for a few minutes in order to warm the hydraulic system oil.

**WARNING**

Personal injury or death can result without releasing all of the hydraulic pressure.

Release all the pressure from the hydraulic system before any lines are disconnected.
The machine should be on level ground. Lower the bucket to the ground and apply slight downward pressure. Engage the parking brake and stop the engine. Keep the armrest lowered. Turn the engine start switch key to the ON position. Push the parking brake switch. Move all of the joystick controls while you press several times on each side of the auxiliary hydraulic control (if equipped) in order to relieve hydraulic pressure. Move the engine start switch key to the OFF position.

1. Remove the hydraulic tank filler cap (1).

2. Remove the access panel in the belly guard underneath the machine.

3. The hose is located on the right side. Pull the drain hose through the access hole in the belly guard. Remove the plug from the end of the drain hose. Drain the oil into a suitable container.

4. Install the drain plug into the drain hose. Tighten to $22 \pm 3 \text{ N-m} (16 \pm 2 \text{ lb ft})$. Pull the drain hose back into the machine.

5. Change the hydraulic system filter. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Hydraulic System Oil Filter - Change".

6. Fill the hydraulic system oil tank. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Lubricant Viscosities" and Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Capacities (Refill)".

7. Maintain the hydraulic oil level approximately in the middle of the sight gauge (2).

   Check the oil level with the loader arms in the fully lowered position.

   **Note:** The oil must be free of bubbles. If bubbles are present in the oil, air is entering the hydraulic system. Inspect the suction hoses and hose clamps.

8. Install the hydraulic tank filler cap.

**Hydraulic System Oil Filter - Replace**

**SMCS Code:** 5068-510

**NOTICE**

Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, NENG2500, "Caterpillar Dealer Service Tool Catalog" for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Caterpillar products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

The hydraulic oil filter is located in the engine compartment.
1. Open the engine access door. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Access Doors and Covers".

2. Remove the hydraulic tank filler cap.

3. Remove the filter with a strap type wrench.

   **Note:** Place a suitable nonconductive container under the hydraulic oil filter. Use this container in order to catch any oil that may spill from the filter or the filter element mounting base.

4. Clean the filter element mounting base. Remove any part of the filter element gasket that remains on the filter element mounting base.

5. Apply a light coat of oil to the gasket of the new filter element gasket.

6. Install a new filter hand tight until the seal of the filter contacts the base. Note the position of the index marks on the filter in relation to a fixed point on the filter base.

   **Note:** There are rotation index marks on the filter that are spaced 90 degrees or 1/4 of a turn away from each other. When you tighten the filter, use the rotation index marks as a guide.

7. Tighten the filter according to the instructions that are printed on the filter. Use the index marks as a guide. For non-Caterpillar filters, use the instructions that are provided with the filter.

8. Maintain the hydraulic oil level to the middle of the sight gauge. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check". **Do not overfill the hydraulic tank.**

9. Inspect the gasket on the hydraulic tank filler cap for damage. Replace the hydraulic tank filler cap, if necessary. Install the hydraulic tank filler cap.

10. Close the engine access door.

---

**Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check**

**SMCS Code:** 5095-535-FLV
Hydraulic System Oil Sample - Obtain

SMCS Code: 5050-008; 7542-008

Open the rear access door. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Access Doors and Covers” for information about the rear door.

Raise the radiator. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Radiator Tilting” for information about the radiator.

Hydraulic Tank Breather - Replace

SMCS Code: 5050-510-BRE; 5056-510-BRE

The breather for the hydraulic tank is located on the top of the hydraulic tank.

1. Raise the cab. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Cab Tilting” for the procedure to raise the cab.

2. Remove the breather.

3. Install the new breather and tighten to 20 ± 3 N·m (15 ± 2 lb ft).
Lift Arm and Cylinder Linkage - Lubricate

SMCS Code: 5102-086-BD; 6107-086-BD

Illustration 170
Radial Lift
(1) Lift Arm Pivot
(2) Lift Cylinder Rod End
(3) Head End Fitting

Illustration 171
Vertical Lift
(1) Lift Arm Pivot
(2) Lift Cylinder Rod End
(3) Head End Fitting
(4) Link Arm

Apply lubricant to all the grease fittings on one side.

Repeat the process for the opposite side of the machine.

Lower Machine Frame - Clean

SMCS Code: 7050-070

1. Tilt the cab upward. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Cab Tilting.”
6. Remove any debris or dirt from the inside of the frame.
7. Reinstall the access panel.
8. Remove the cover from the ventilation ducts.
9. Tilt the cab downward.

Oil Filter - Inspect

SMCS Code: 1308-507; 3067-507; 5068-507

Inspect a Used Filter for Debris

Use a filter cutter to cut the filter element open. Spread apart the pleats and inspect the element for metal and for other debris. An excessive amount of debris in the filter element can indicate a possible failure.

If metals are found in the filter element, a magnet can be used to differentiate between ferrous metals and nonferrous metals.

Ferrous metals can indicate wear on steel parts and on cast iron parts.

Nonferrous metals can indicate wear on the aluminum parts of the engine such as main bearings, rod bearings, or turbocharger bearings.

Small amounts of debris may be found in the filter element. This could be caused by friction and by normal wear. Consult your Caterpillar dealer in order to arrange for further analysis if an excessive amount of debris is found.
Using an oil filter element that is not recommended by Caterpillar can result in severe engine damage to engine bearings, to the crankshaft, and to other parts. This can result in larger particles in unfiltered oil. The particles could enter the lubricating system and the particles could cause damage.

Quick Coupler - Clean/Inspect

SMCS Code: 6129-040; 6129-070

**WARNING**

Personal injury or death can result from improperly checking for a leak.

Always use a board or cardboard when checking for a leak. Escaping air or fluid under pressure, even a pin-hole size leak, can penetrate body tissue causing serious injury, and possible death.

If fluid is injected into your skin, it must be treated immediately by a doctor familiar with this type of injury.

**Note:** Do not weld on the quick coupler without consulting your Caterpillar dealer.

1. Clean the quick coupler prior to inspection in order to properly inspect the quick coupler.

5. Check the top edges of the quick coupler assembly for wear or for damage. Check the face of the quick coupler assembly for wear or for damage.

6. Inspect the components inside the quick coupler for the following problems: loose bolts, oil leaks, broken parts, missing parts, and cracked components.

7. Inspect the hydraulic lines and the hydraulic fittings for damage or for wear. Repair any worn components or replace any worn components. Repair any leaking components.

8. Inspect the steel material of the quick coupler for cracks.

**Note:** Perform all repairs before placing the quick coupler back into operation.

Radiator Core - Clean

SMCS Code: 1353-070-KO

The radiator is located at the rear of the machine above the engine compartment.

**Note:** Adjust the frequency of cleaning according to the effects of the operating environment. On models 272C and 297C, clean the aftercooler core when you clean the radiator core.


2. Tilt the radiator guard upward. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Radiator Tilting”.

**WARNING**

Personal injury can result from air pressure.

Personal injury can result without following proper procedure. When using pressure air, wear a protective face shield and protective clothing.

**Maximum air pressure at the nozzle must be less than 205 kPa (30 psi) for cleaning purposes.**

**NOTICE**

When you are using compressed air or high pressure water to clean the radiator fins, ensure that the air or water is directed parallel to the fins. If the compressed air or high pressure water is not directed parallel to the radiator fins, the radiator fins could be bent or damaged.
Note: Pressurized air is the preferred method for removing loose debris. Hold the nozzle approximately 6 mm (0.25 inch) away from the fins. Slowly move the air nozzle in a direction that is parallel with the tubes. The air nozzle should point in the opposite direction of the flow of the fan. This will remove debris that is between the tubes. Pressurized water may also be used for cleaning. The maximum water pressure for cleaning purposes must be less than 275 kPa (40 psi). Use pressurized water in order to soften mud. Use a degreaser and steam for removal of oil and grease. Wash the core with detergent and hot water. Thoroughly rinse the core with clean water.

3. Clean the radiator core from the top toward the fan.

Note: If parts of the cooling system appear to be damaged or if parts of the cooling system are repaired, a leak test is highly recommended. Consult your Caterpillar dealer for the most current information about the cooling system.

4. After cleaning, start the engine and accelerate the engine to high idle rpm. This will help in the removal of debris and drying of the core. Stop the engine. Use a light bulb behind the core in order to inspect the core for cleanliness. Repeat the cleaning, if necessary.

5. Inspect the fins and tubes of the radiator core for damage. Some fins and tubes may be worn from abrasive material that has passed through the radiator core. Bent fins may be opened with a “comb”.

---

**NOTICE**

Do not clean a rotating fan with high pressure water. Fan blade failure can result.

---

6. Remove any dirt or debris from the fan, the fan hub, the oil cooler, the radiator guard and the fan guard.

Note: Dirt or debris on the cooling fan can cause an imbalance.

7. Tilt the radiator guard downward.

8. Close the engine access door.

---

**Refrigerant Dryer - Replace (If Equipped)**

SMCS Code: 7322-510

---

**WARNING**

Personal injury can result from contact with refrigerant.

Contact with refrigerant can cause frost bite. Keep face and hands away to help prevent injury.

Protective goggles must always be worn when refrigerant lines are opened, even if the gauges indicate the system is empty of refrigerant.

Always use precaution when a fitting is removed. Slowly loosen the fitting. If the system is still under pressure, release it slowly in a well ventilated area.

Personal injury or death can result from inhaling refrigerant through a lit cigarette.

Inhaling air conditioner refrigerant gas through a lit cigarette or other smoking method or inhaling fumes released from a flame contacting air conditioner refrigerant gas, can cause bodily harm or death.

Do not smoke when servicing air conditioners or wherever refrigerant gas may be present.

Use a certified recovery and recycling cart to properly remove the refrigerant from the air conditioning system.

---

**NOTICE**

If the refrigerant system has been open to the outside air (without being plugged) for more than 30 minutes, the receiver-dryer must be replaced. Moisture will enter an open refrigerant system and cause corrosion which will lead to component failure.

Refer to Service Manual, SENR5664, “Air Conditioning and Heating R-134a For All Caterpillar Machines” for the proper procedure to change the receiver-dryer assembly and for the procedure to reclaim the refrigerant gas.

Note: The receiver-dryer must also be replaced when the air conditioning system is evacuated.
Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS) and Falling Object Protective Structure (FOPS) - Inspect

**SMCS Code:** 7323-040; 7325-040

1. Inspect the ROPS for loose bolts. Tighten the bolts (1) to the following torque 125 ± 20 N·m (92 ± 15 lb ft). Check the hinge on the cab (2). Check the ROPS and the FOPS for damaged bolts or missing bolts. Replace any damaged bolts or missing bolts with original equipment parts only.

2. Operate the machine on a rough surface. Replace the ROPS mounting supports if the ROPS emits a noise. Replace the ROPS mounting supports if the ROPS rattles. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Cab Tilting” for a description of the mounting support.

Do not straighten the ROPS or the FOPS. Do not repair the ROPS or the FOPS by welding reinforcement plates to the ROPS or the FOPS.

Consult your Caterpillar dealer for repair of any cracks in the ROPS or the FOPS.

Inspect the Flying Object Guard (if equipped) for damage.

Consult your Caterpillar dealer for repair of any cracks in the Flying Object Guard.

---

Seat Belt - Inspect

**SMCS Code:** 7327-040

Always inspect the condition of the seat belt and the condition of the seat belt mounting hardware before you operate the machine. Replace any parts that are damaged or worn before you operate the machine.

1. Inspect buckle (1) for wear or for damage. If the buckle is worn or damaged, replace the seat belt.

2. Inspect seat belt (2) for webbing that is worn or frayed. Replace the seat belt if the webbing is worn or frayed.

Inspect all seat belt mounting hardware for wear or for damage. Replace any mounting hardware that is worn or damaged. Make sure that the mounting bolts are tight.

If your machine is equipped with a seat belt extension, also perform this inspection procedure for the seat belt extension.

Contact your Caterpillar dealer for the replacement of the seat belt and the mounting hardware.

**Note:** The seat belt should be replaced within 3 years of the date of installation. A date of installation label is attached to the seat belt retractor and buckle. If the date of installation label is missing, replace belt within 3 years from the year of manufacture as indicated on belt webbing label, buckle housing, or installation tags (non-retractable belts).
Seat Belt - Replace

SMCS Code: 7327-510

The seat belt should be replaced within 3 years of the date of installation. A date of installation label is attached to the seat belt retractor and buckle. If the date of installation label is missing, replace belt within 3 years from the year of manufacture as indicated on belt webbing label, buckle housing, or installation tags (non-retractable belts).

Consult your Cat dealer for the replacement of the seat belt and the mounting hardware.

Determine age of new seat belt before installing on seat. A manufacture label is on belt webbing and imprinted on belt buckle. Do not exceed install by date on label.

Complete seat belt system should be installed with new mounting hardware.

Date of installation labels should be marked and affixed to the seat belt retractor and buckle.

Note: Date of installation labels should be permanently marked by punch (retractable belt) or stamp (non-retractable belt).

If your machine is equipped with a seat belt extension, also perform this replacement procedure for the seat belt extension.

Sprocket - Inspect

SMCS Code: 4164-040

Note: Operating the machine in conditions that are muddy or sandy will cause accelerated wear on the sprocket and other undercarriage components. Clean the undercarriage of the machine daily in order to maximize component life.

Sprocket Inspection for 279C, 289C, and 299C

Inspect

1. Measure the sprocket teeth in three places as shown in illustration 180.

2. Calculate the average of the 3 measurements to determine the 50% wear limit.

3. If the average of 3 measurements is less than 178 mm (7 inch), relocate the sprocket to the opposite side of the machine. Follow the steps in the “Relocate” section. If the average of 3 measurements is less than 165 mm (6.5 inch), then replace the sprocket. Follow the steps in the “Replace” section.

Relocate

1. Remove the track on both sides of the machine.

2. Remove the sprocket on the left side of the machine. Move the sprocket to the right side.
3. Remove the sprocket on the right side of the machine. Move the sprocket to the left side.

4. Install the sprockets. Tighten the bolts to the proper torque.

5. Install the track on both sides of the machine.

**Replace**

1. Remove the track on both sides of the machine.

2. Remove the sprocket on the left side of the machine. Install the new sprocket.

3. Tighten the bolts to the proper torque.

4. Remove the sprocket on the right side of the machine. Install the new sprocket.

5. Tighten the bolts to the proper torque.

6. Install the track on both sides of the machine.

**Tilt Cylinder Bearings and Bucket Linkage Bearings - Lubricate**

**SMCS Code:** 5104-086-BD; 6107-086-BD

Wipe all of the grease fittings before you apply lubricant.

Apply lubricant to the grease fittings (1) for the upper bearings for the tilt cylinders.

Apply lubricant to the grease fittings (2) for the lower bearings for the tilt cylinders.

Apply lubricant to the grease fittings (3) for the coupler engagement pins.

Apply lubricant to the grease fitting (4) for the pivot pin of the quick coupler assembly.

There are a total of 8 grease fittings.

**Track - Inspect/Adjust**

**SMCS Code:** 4170-025; 4170-040

Periodic adjustment of the track tension is necessary in order to avoid damage to the tracks. Maintaining the tracks at the proper tension will maximize the service life of the undercarriage components. The undercarriage components include the final drive sprocket, idlers, rollers, and the track.

**NOTICE**

Do not overtighten the tracks. Tracks that are too tight can cause premature failure of the tracks. Tracks that are too tight can cause power loss and bearing failures.

Tracks that are too loose increase the possibility of the track derailing or the drive lugs mis-feeding on the drive sprocket. In aggressive operating conditions, occasional mis-feeding is normal. If consistent mis-feeding is observed, ensure that the track tension is set to the recommended specification. If the track tension is set to the recommended specification and mis-feeding is still observed, then your application may require a tighter track tension. Increase the track tension until consistent mis-feeding is no longer observed.

The intervals for track tension vary depending on the following conditions: the machine application, the operator, the soil conditions, the climate, and the condition of the undercarriage components. Operators are responsible for basic visual inspections of the track tension on a daily basis.

**Note:** Lubricate the fittings with the loader lift arms in the fully lowered position.
**Inspect**

Support the machine so that the track is a minimum of 51 mm (2 inch) above the ground.

Measure the track sag at the middle track roller. Measure the distance from the bottom surface of the flange on the roller to the inside top surface of the track. The minimum track sag should be 30 mm (1.18 inch). The maximum track sag should be 40 mm (1.57 inch).

---

**Track Adjustment**

1. In order to adjust the track, remove the access panel on the side of the undercarriage.

2. Pressurized grease in a cylinder is used in order to provide tension on the track. Use a grease gun in order to apply grease to the grease fitting on the cylinder. The track will be tightened.

3. Recheck the track tension.

4. Replace the access panel when the 30 mm (1.18 inch) sag is achieved.
Detension the track

**WARNING**

Personal injury or death can result from grease under pressure.

Grease coming out of the relief valve under pressure can penetrate the body causing injury or death.

Do not stand directly in front of the relief valve to see if grease is escaping. Watch the track or track adjustment cylinder to see if the track is being loosened.

If track does not loosen, close the relief valve and consult your Cat dealer.

**Note:** Many operations for maintenance of the undercarriage require the track to be loosened.

1. In order to detension the track, remove the access panel on the side of the undercarriage.

2. Loosen the grease fitting with a suitable device. Loosen the grease fitting carefully until the track begins to loosen.

**Note:** Catch the grease in a suitable container. Dispose of the grease in accordance with all applicable regulations.

**Note:** One turn should be sufficient. If grease does not flow as expected, the lock plate can be temporarily removed. The relief valve can be turned further to allow for increased flow. Do not turn the relief valve more than eight turns.

3. Tighten the grease fitting to a torque of 74 ± 14 N·m (55 ± 10 lb ft) when the desired track tension is reached.

4. Replace the access panel.

**Track - Remove/Replace**

**SMCS Code:** 4170-011; 4170-510

**Removing the Track**

1. Position the machine on firm, level ground.

2. Remove any work tool that is attached to the quick coupler.

3. Raise the loader arms and install the brace for the loader lift arm. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Loader Lift Arm Brace Operation”.

4. Use an appropriate floor jack in order to lift the machine off the ground. Use appropriate jack stands in order to block up the machine. Raise the machine until tracks are approximately 50 mm (2.0 inch) (A) off the ground.

5. Detension the track. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Track - Inspect/Adjust”.

6. Use a suitable lifting device. Lift the track at middle position between the front idler and the final drive sprocket until the front idler collapses fully.

**Note:** It is helpful to support the bottom of the track in order to maximize the slack between the front idler and the drive sprocket.

7. Keep the track supported with a hoist. Lift the track over the flange of the front idler so that the inner track guides clear flanges.
8. Lift the track over the sprocket with a suitable lifting device. The inner guides need to clear the sprocket teeth.

9. Lift the track over the rear idler. The inner track guides need to clear the rear idler.

Installing the Track

**Note:** The approximate weight of the track is 247 kg (545 lb).

1. Use a suitable lifting device. Slide the track onto the rear idler so that the inner track guides straddle the rear idler. If your machine is equipped with an idler with dual flanges, the inner track guides must seat between the flanges.

2. Pull the track forward in order to ensure that the track guides are fully seated on the rear idler.

3. Lift the track over the final drive sprocket so that the inner track guides straddle the sprocket teeth. The sprocket teeth should seat in the openings in the middle of the track.

4. Pull all of the slack forward. This will provide the maximum amount of slack to aid with installation across the front idlers.

**Note:** It is helpful to support the bottom of the track in order to maximize the slack. This will help with installation.

5. Position the track so that the inner track guides seat between the flanges on the front idler.

6. Tension the track. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Track - Inspect/Adjust” for the procedure.

**Note:** The idlers and the rollers contain oil. The idlers and the rollers are sealed for life. Periodically, inspect the idlers and the rollers for leaks or for excessive end play. Contact your Caterpillar dealer if either leaks or excessive end play is found.

---

Window Washer Reservoir - Fill (If Equipped)

**SMCS Code:** 7306-544-KE

**NOTICE**

When operating in freezing temperatures, use Caterpillar nonfreezing window washer solvent or equivalent. System damage can result from freezing.

---

**Track Roller and Idler - Inspect/Replace**

**SMCS Code:** 4159-040; 4159-510; 4180-040; 4180-510

**Inspect**

Clean the undercarriage before inspecting the idlers and the rollers.

Inspect the idlers and the rollers for damage and wear.

The idlers and the rollers should be replaced when the damage to the wheels adversely affects machine performance.

---

The reservoir for the window washer solvent is located inside the cab by the left footrest.

Fill the reservoir with window washer solvent. Window washer solvent with isopropyl alcohol is recommended.
Window Wiper - Inspect/Replace (If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 7305-040; 7305-510

Inspect the condition of the front window wiper blade. Replace the window wiper blade if the window wiper blade is worn or damaged. If the window wiper blade streaks the window, replace the window wiper blade.

Windows - Clean

SMCS Code: 7310-070

Rear Window and Glass Front Door

Use commercially available window cleaning solutions in order to clean the windows.

Apply the cleaning solution liberally. Wipe the surface.

Dry the surface in order to prevent spots.

Side Windows

Use commercially available window cleaning solutions in order to clean the windows.

The side windows of the cab can be removed for cleaning. Refer to the following procedure in order to remove the side windows.

1. Release the latch. Slide the front window rearward between the circular marks (1) in the top of the window frame. Push the window upward in the track. Pull outward on the bottom of the window in order to remove the window.

2. Release the latch. Slide the rear window forward between the circular marks (1) in the top of the window frame. Push the window upward in the track. Pull outward on the bottom of the window in order to remove the window.

3. Pull straight up on the bottom window in order to remove the window from the track. Pull inward in order to remove the window.

4. Reverse the process in order to install the windows. Install the lower window first. Then install the rear window in the outer track. Install the front window in the inner track next.

Polycarbonate Front Door and Polycarbonate Top Window

Note: Do not wipe the window dry. Do not use paper towels. This may scratch the finish of the polycarbonate windows over time.

For cleaning your polycarbonate top window or polycarbonate front door, use a soft cloth, a sponge, or a chamois. Use any of the following cleaners:

- soap and water
- isopropyl alcohol
- kerosene
- denatured alcohol
- commercially available window cleaning solutions

Apply the cleaning solution liberally. Wipe the surface.
Work Tool - Lubricate

SMCS Code: 6700-086

Multipurpose Bucket

Apply lubricant to the grease fitting (1) for the pivot pin of the apron.

Apply lubricant to the grease fitting (2) for the rod end of the multipurpose bucket cylinder.

Apply lubricant to the grease fitting (3) for the head end of the multipurpose bucket cylinder.

Repeat for the other side of the bucket.

There are six grease fittings.

Utility Grapple Bucket and Utility Grapple Fork

Apply lubricant to the four grease fittings for the grapples.

Industrial Grapple Bucket and Industrial Grapple Fork

Apply lubricant to the four grease fittings for the fork cylinders.
Apply lubricant to the four grease fittings for the two forks.

There are eight grease fittings.

**Grapple Rake**

Apply lubricant to the four grease fittings for the grapple cylinders.

Apply lubricant to the four grease fittings for the two grapples.

There are eight grease fittings.

**Angle Blade**

Apply lubricant to the grease fitting on the rod end of the angle cylinder.

Apply lubricant to the grease fitting on the horizontal pivot point of the blade.

Apply lubricant to the grease fitting on the vertical pivot point of the blade. Repeat for opposite side of the blade.

Apply lubricant to the grease fitting on the pivot point of the cylinder.

There are five grease fittings.
Dozer Blade

Apply lubricant to the grease fitting on both ends of the right hand angle cylinder (1). Repeat for opposite side of the blade.

Apply lubricant to the grease fitting on the pivot points on each end of the tilt cylinder (2).

There are six grease fittings.

Work Tool Mounting Bracket - Inspect

SMCS Code: 6700-040-BK

Inspect upper angled plate (1) and ensure that the plate is not bent or otherwise damaged. Inspect holes (2) for wear and for damage. Inspect lower angled plate (3) and ensure that the plate is not bent or otherwise damaged. If any wear is suspected or any damage is suspected, consult your Caterpillar dealer before you use the work tool.
Reference Information Section

Reference Materials

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Cooling System

Special Publication, PMEP5027, “Label - ELC Radiator Label”

Special Publication, PEHJ0067, “Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar ELC”

Special Publication, PEHP9554, “Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar DEAC (Diesel Engine Antifreeze/Coolant)”

Special Publication, SEBD0518, “Know Your Cooling System”

Special Publication, SEBD0970, “Coolant and Your Engine”

Grease

Data Sheet, NEHP6010, “Cat Ultra 5Moly Grease (NLGI grade 1 and grade 2)”

Data Sheet, NEHP6011, “Cat Arctic Platinum Grease (NLGI grade 0)”

Data Sheet, NEHP6012, “Cat Desert Gold Grease (NLGI grade 2)”

Data Sheet, NEHP6015, “Cat High Speed Ball Bearing Grease (NLGI grade 2)”

Special Publication, PEGJ0035, “Grease Selection Guide”

Data Sheet, PEHJ0088, “Cat Multipurpose Grease (NLGI grade 2)”

Data Sheet, PEHP0002, “Cat Advanced 3Moly Grease (NLGI grade 2)”

Hydraulic Oil


Special Publication, PEHJ0009, “Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar Hydraulic Oil (HYDO) (SAE 10W)”

Special Publication, PEHP6047, “Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar Biodegradable Hydraulic Oil (HEES)”

Miscellaneous Publications

Special Publication, PECP9067, “One Safe Source”

Special Publication, PEDP9131, “Fluid Contamination - The Silent Thief”

Special Publication, PEWJ0074, “Cat Filter & Fluid Application Guide”

Special Publication, REHS1199, “Installation Procedure for the Multi Terrain Loader Track Guide”

Special Publication, SEBD0400, “Dictionary of Pictographic Symbols”

Special Publication, SEBD0717, “Diesel Fuels and Your Engine”

Special Publication, SEBF1015, “Improving Component Durability - Final Drives and Differentials”


Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluid Recommendations”

Special Publication, SEBU5898, “Cold Weather Recommendations”

Special Publication, SENR5664, “Air Conditioning and Heater R-134a for All Caterpillar Machines”

Special Publication, SENR9620, “Improving Fuel System Durability”

Special Publication, SMBU6981, “Emissions Control Warranty Information”

Oil

Special Publication, PEHP3050, “Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar Multipurpose Tractor Oil (MTO)”

Special Publication, PEHP6001, “How to Take a Good Oil Sample”

Special Publication, PEHJ0007, “Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar Arctic TDTO (SAE 0W-20) (synthetic blend)”

Special Publication, PEHJ0008, “Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar Arctic DEO (SAE 0W-30)”
Special Publication, PEHJ0030, “Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar Synthetic Gear Oil (SAE 75W-140)”

Special Publication, PEHJ0059, “Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar DEO (SAE 10W-30)”

Special Publication, PEHP7506, “Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar TDTO (SAE 10W, SAE 30, SAE 50)”

Special Publication, PEHP7508, “Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar Gear Oil (GO) (SAE 80W-90 and SAE 85W-140)”

Special Publication, PEHP7062, “Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar DEO Synthetic (SAE 5W-40)”

Special Publication, PEHP9530, “Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar FDAO (SAE 60)”

Special Publication, PEHP9570, “Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar FDAO Synthetic (Multigrade)”

Special Publication, PELJ0179, “Caterpillar Engine Crankcase Fluid-1 Specifications (Cat ECF-1)”

Special Publication, PEHP8035, “Product Data Sheet for TDTO Transmission Multi-Season (TMS)”

Special Publication, SEBD0640, “Oil and Your Engine”

**Operation and Maintenance Manuals**


**Parts Manuals**

Parts Manual, SEBP5067 279C

Parts Manual - Compact Disc, SERP5067 279C

Parts Manual, SEBP5068 289C

Parts Manual - Compact Disc, SERP5068 289C

Parts Manual, SEBP5069 299C

Parts Manual - Compact Disc, SERP5069 299C

**ROPS/FOPS Structure**

Special Publication, SEBD1587, “What ROPS/FOPS Certification Means”

Special Publication, SEHS6929, “Inspection, Maintenance and Repair of ROPS and Attachment Installation Guidelines”

**Safety Manuals**

Safety DVD, TEVD6193, “C-Series Skid Steer Loader and Multi Terrain Loader Safety & Operating Tips”

**S·O·S Information**

Special Publication, PEDP7036, “S·O·S Services”

Special Publication, PEHP7052, “Making the Most of S·O·S Services”

Special Publication, PEHP7057, “S·O·S Coolant Analysis”

Special Publication, PEHP7076, “Understanding S·O·S Services Tests”

**Specifications Manuals**

Specifications Manual, SENR3130, “Torque Specifications”

**Tools**

Special Publication, NENG2500, “Caterpillar Dealer Service Tool Catalog”

**Additional Reference Material**

SAE J183, “Classification” This can normally be found in the SAE handbook.

SAE J313, “Diesel Fuels” This can be found in the SAE handbook. Also, this publication can be obtained from your local technological society, from your local library, or from your local college.

SAE J754, “Nomenclature” This can normally be found in the SAE handbook.

Engine Manufacturers Association, “Engine Fluids Data Book”

Engine Manufacturers Association
Two North LaSalle Street, Suite 2200
Chicago, Illinois USA 60602
E-mail: ema@enginemanufacturers.org
(312) 827-8700
Facsimile: (312) 827-8737
Caterpillar Approved Work Tools

SMCS Code: 6700

Only use Caterpillar approved work tools on this machine.

Note: Do not use a Caterpillar work tool on a machine that is not approved by Caterpillar.

Note: A Debris Barrier Kit is required for use in applications which create airborne debris. Consult your Caterpillar dealer for information about this kit.

Use of the following equipment may create airborne debris:

- mulching head
- brush cutter
- hammers
- recycling of paper products
- certain agricultural applications

Caterpillar approves the following work tools for use on this machine:

Table 31

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caterpillar Approved Work Tools for Multi Terrain Loaders</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Purpose Buckets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Capacity Buckets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multipurpose Buckets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dirt Buckets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Caterpillar Approved Work Tools for Multi Terrain Loaders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Machine</th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Light Material Buckets**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Utility Buckets**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Augers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A14B</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A19B</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A26B</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Backhoes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BH150</td>
<td>!</td>
<td>!</td>
<td>!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BH160</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Angle Blades**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dozer Blades**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Brooms**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BA18</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BP15B</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BP18B</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BU115</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BU118</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Brush cutters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BR160</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BR166</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BR172</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BR272</td>
<td>!</td>
<td>!</td>
<td>!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Caterpillar Approved Work Tools for Multi Terrain Loaders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Machine</th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BR378</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Cold Planers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PC203</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC204</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC205</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC206</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC210</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Carriage and Fork Tines**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Utility Forks**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Industrial Grapple Buckets**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Industrial Grapple Forks**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Utility Grapple Buckets**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Utility Grapple Forks**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Grapple Rake**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Landscape Rakes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LR15B</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LR18B</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Landscape Tillers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LT13B</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LT18B</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Material Handling Arm**

(continued)
## Caterpillar Approved Work Tools for Multi Terrain Loaders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Machine</th>
<th>279C</th>
<th>289C</th>
<th>299C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mulcher</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HM312</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Power Box Rakes</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PR172 MAN</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PR172 HYD</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PR184 MAN</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PR184 HYD</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PR190 MAN</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PR190 HYD</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sheer</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S305</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hammers</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H55Ds</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H63/H63s</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Snowblowers</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SR17</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SR18</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SR21</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SR318</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SR321</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stump Grinders</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SG16B</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SG18B</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trenchers</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T6B</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T9B</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T15B</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vibratory Compactors</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CV16B</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CV18B</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wheel Saws</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SW45 (3 inches)</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SW45 (6 inches)</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SW45 (8 inches)</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SW60 (6 inches)</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SW60 (8 inches)</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
<td>#</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The machine performance is optimum with this work tool.

The machine performance is acceptable with this work tool.

The machine is equipped with high flow hydraulics.

This work tool is not recommended for use on this machine.

The machine performance is optimum with the available HF/XPS option.

The machine performance is acceptable with the available HF/XPS option.

This work tool is not approved for use on this machine. Do not use this work tool on this machine.

This work tool has a lift restriction on this machine. Do not raise the lower pivot pin higher than 1 m (3 ft) above the ground.

Many of the work tools in the table have an Operation and Maintenance Manual. Please refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual that is provided with the work tool for the proper use of the work tool.

Contact your Caterpillar dealer concerning specific work tools that are approved by Caterpillar for this machine. This list was complete at the time of publication. There may be additional work tools that have been approved since that time. Consult your Caterpillar dealer for an updated list of approved work tools.

**INTENDED USE STATEMENT for the Material Handling Arm**

This Work Tool has the intended functions of lifting and transporting suspended loads. Always select sufficiently sized lifting accessories before use.

Do not use the work tool improperly.

Remove the work tool from the machine before you lift the host machine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Lifting and Tying Down the Machine” for details.

**INTENDED USE STATEMENT for the Grapple Bucket**

This Work Tool has the intended functions of dozing, digging, loading, lifting, carrying, and moving material such as earth, crushed rock, gravel, or debris.

Do not use the work tool improperly.

Remove the work tool from the machine before you lift the host machine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Lifting and Tying Down the Machine” for details.

**INTENDED USE STATEMENT for the Grapple Rake**

This Work Tool has the intended functions of raking, loading, carrying, and moving bulky material. The material may be encountered in the following applications:

- Landscape cleanup
- Storm debris cleanup
- Demolition
- Industrial
- Construction

Do not use the work tool improperly.

- Do not pry with one rake tine. Use multiple rake tines in order to loosen material.
- Remove the work tool from the machine before you lift the host machine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Lifting and Tying Down the Machine” for details.
- Do not place the weight of the host machine on the grapples in the open position.

**INTENDED USE STATEMENT for the Grapple Forks**

This Work Tool has the intended functions of loading, carrying, and moving bulky materials.

Do not use the work tool improperly.
Remove the work tool from the machine before you lift the host machine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Lifting and Tying Down the Machine" for details.

Decommissioning and Disposal

**SMCS Code:** 1000; 7000

When the product is removed from service, local regulations for the product decommissioning will vary. Disposal of the product will vary with local regulations. Consult the nearest Cat dealer for additional information.
# Index

## A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Access Doors and Covers</th>
<th>113</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine Access Door</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Messages</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product Link (If Equipped)</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aftercooler Core - Inspect/Clean</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clean</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aftercooler Intake Screen - Clean</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Cleaner Dust Valve - Clean/Inspect</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Conditioner Condenser - Clean (If Equipped)</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>246C, 256C, 262C, 277C, 287C, 279C, and 289C</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>272C, 297C, and 299C</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alert Indicators</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Machine Security System (If Equipped)</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternate Exit</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Exit</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary Exit</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angle Blade Operation</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height Adjustment</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tilt Lock</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axle Bearings - Lubricate</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## B

| Backup Alarm - Test | 132 |
| Battery or Battery Cable - Inspect/Replace | 132 |
| Recycle the Battery | 133 |
| Before Operation    | 32, 59 |
| Before Starting Engine | 31 |
| Belts - Inspect/Adjust/Replace | 133 |
| Air Conditioner (if equipped) | 134 |
| Belts                | 133 |
| Finish               | 134 |
| Blade Frame - Adjust  | 135 |
| Height Adjustment    | 135 |
| Trunnion Joint       | 136 |
| Bucket Cutting Edges - Inspect/Replace | 136 |
| Bucket Tips - Inspect/Replace | 136 |
| Burn Prevention      | 26  |
| Batteries            | 27  |
| Coolant              | 26  |
| Oils                 | 27  |

## C

| Cab Air Filter - Clean/Replace (If Equipped) | 137 |
| Fresh Air Filter | 137 |
| Recirculation Filter | 137 |
| Cab Interior - Clean | 137 |
| Cab Tilting        | 114 |
| Tilting the Cab Downward | 115 |
| Tilting the Cab Upward | 114 |
| Capacities (Refill) | 122 |

## D

| Daily Inspection | 59 |
| Declaration of Conformity | 53–58 |
| Decommissioning and Disposal | 184 |

## E

| Electrical Storm Injury Prevention | 31 |
| Emissions Certification Film       | 52 |
| Certification Label for Emissions  | 52 |
| Engine Air Filter Primary Element - Clean/Replace | 144 |
| Clean                              | 145 |
| Replace                            | 145 |
| Engine Air Filter Secondary Element - Replace | 146 |
| Engine Compartment - Inspect/Clean | 147 |
| Engine Oil and Filter - Change     | 148 |
| Engine Oil Level - Check           | 148 |
| Engine Starting                     | 32, 84 |
| Engine Starting (Alternate Methods) | 111 |
| Engine Starting with Jump Start Cables | 111 |
| Engine Valve Lash - Check          | 150 |
| Equipment Lowering Control Valve - Check | 150 |
| Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped | 34, 100 |
| Alternate Lowering the Equipment   | 101 |
| Lowering the Equipment with the Accumulator Charged | 101 |

## F

<p>| Final Drive Oil - Change | 151 |
| Final Drive Oil Level - Check | 151 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fire Extinguisher Location</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire Prevention and Explosion Prevention</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery and Battery Cables</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ether</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire Extinguisher</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lines, Tubes, and Hoses</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiring</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire Safety</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreword</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>California Proposition 65 Warning</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caterpillar Product Identification Number</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certified Engine Maintenance</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Literature Information</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Machine Capacity</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Injection Timing - Check</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel System Primary Filter (Water Separator) - Drain</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel System Primary Filter (Water Separator) - Element - Replace</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel System Priming Pump - Operate</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Tank Cap - Clean</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Tank Water and Sediment - Drain</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuses - Replace</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse panel behind cab</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuses</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main Fuse</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Hazard Information</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Containing Fluid Spillage</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dispose of Waste Properly</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluid Penetration</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inhalation</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pressurized Air and Water</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trapped Pressure</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Information</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guards (Operator Protection)</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Guards (If Equipped)</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS), Falling Object Protective Structure (FOPS) or Tip Over Protection Structure (TOPS)</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydraulic System Oil - Change</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procedure for Changing the Hydraulic Oil</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection of the Oil Change Interval</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydraulic System Oil Filter - Replace</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydraulic System Oil Sample - Obtain</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydraulic Tank Breather - Replace</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identification Information</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Important Safety Information</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lift Arm and Cylinder Linkage - Lubricate</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifting and Tying Down the Machine</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifting the Grapple Rake</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifting the Machine</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tying Down the Machine</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loader Lift Arm Brace Operation</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disengage the Lift Arm Brace</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engage the Lift Arm Brace</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower Machine Frame - Clean</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lubricant Viscosities</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biodiesel</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coolant Information</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diesel Fuel Recommendations</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive Train Components</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Oil</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Additives</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Information for Lubricants</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydraulic Systems</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selecting the Viscosity</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special Lubricants</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lubricant Viscosities and Refill Capacities</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Machine Operation</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Machine Retrieval</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Machine Storage Procedure</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance Access</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance Interval Schedule</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance Section</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance Support</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Material Handling Arm Operation</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One Person Operation</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two Person Operation</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mounting and Dismounting</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oil Filter - Inspect</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect a Used Filter for Debris</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>32, 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation Information</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Counterrotate turn</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Information</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating on a Slope</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating on a Transition</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation Section</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**G**
General Hazard Information ................................................. 23
Containing Fluid Spillage .................................................. 25
Dispose of Waste Properly .................................................. 26
Fluid Penetration .................................................................. 25
Inhalation ............................................................................. 25
Pressurized Air and Water .................................................... 24
Trapped Pressure .............................................................. 24

**H**
Hydraulic System Oil - Change ............................................ 158
Procedure for Changing the Hydraulic Oil ................................ 159
Selection of the Oil Change Interval ..................................... 158
Hydraulic System Oil Filter - Replace .................................. 160
Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check ..................................... 161
Hydraulic System Oil Sample - Obtain ................................... 162
Hydraulic Tank Breather - Replace ..................................... 162
Operator Controls .......................................................... 63
Pallet Forks Operation .......................................................... 95
Radiator Core - Clean .......................................................... 165
Radiator Tilting ................................................................ 116
Tilting the Radiator Guard .................................................. 117
12 volt plug (14) .................................................................. 67
Air Conditioner Control (27) ............................................... 69
Alert Indicator Panel (16) ...................................................... 67
Automatic Level Control (7) ............................................... 66
Auxiliary Electrical Control (E) .......................................... 80
Auxiliary Electrical Control "AUX 8" ........................................ 66
Auxiliary Hydraulic Controls .............................................. 79
Auxiliary Hydraulic Pressure Release (1) ................................. 64
Beacon Switch (20) ............................................................ 68
Coolant Temperature (17) .................................................... 68
Creep Control (24) ............................................................. 69
Digital Display Window ....................................................... 70
Digital Display Window (19) ............................................... 68
Engine Start Switch (13) ...................................................... 67
Fan Speed Control (26) ...................................................... 69
Front Work Lights (4) ......................................................... 65
Fuel Level Gauge (9) .......................................................... 66
Hazard Flashers (21) ........................................................... 68
Hydraulic Lockout and Interlock Override (2) ......................... 65
Hydraulic Oil Temperature (18) ........................................... 68
Joystick Control Pattern (11) ............................................... 67
Joystick Controls ............................................................... 74
Left Side Controls ............................................................. 64
Multifunction Switch for the Left Hand Trigger (5) ..................... 65
Other Features in the Cab ..................................................... 72
Parking Brake Control (12) .................................................. 67
Rear Work Lights (3) .......................................................... 65
Ride Control (25) .................................................................. 69
Right Side Controls ............................................................ 68
Roading Lights (22) ............................................................ 69
Selectable Control Pattern and Dedicated Control Pattern .......... 76
Service Hour Meter (10) ...................................................... 66
Temperature Control (28) .................................................... 69
Turn Signals (23) ............................................................... 69
Window Wiper and Window Washer (15) ............................... 67
Work Tool Coupler Control (8) ............................................. 66

Rated Load ........................................................................ 39
Bucket Rated Load ............................................................. 39
Rated Load with a Material Handling Arm ......................... 46
Rated Loads for Forks ......................................................... 43
Reference Information Section ............................................. 177
Reference Material ............................................................. 177
Additional Reference Material ............................................. 178
Cooling System ............................................................... 177
Grease ............................................................................. 177
Hydraulic Oil ................................................................. 177
Miscellaneous Publications ................................................. 177
Oil .................................................................................... 177
Operation and Maintenance Manuals .................................. 178
Parts Manuals ................................................................. 178
ROPS/FOPS Structure ..................................................... 178
S·O·S Information ............................................................ 178
Safety Manuals ............................................................... 178
Specifications Manuals ..................................................... 178
Tools .............................................................................. 178
Reference Materials ......................................................... 177
Refrigerant Dryer - Replace (If Equipped) ......................... 166
Roading the Machine ......................................................... 104
Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS) and Falling Object Protective Structure (FOPS) - Inspect .... 167

S

S·O·S Information ............................................................ 122
Safety Messages ............................................................... 6
Safety Messages (Work Tools) .............................................. 15
Safety Section ................................................................. 6
Seat Belt ........................................................................... 61
Extension of the Seat Belt .................................................. 63
Seat Belt Adjustment for Non-Retractable Seat Belts .............. 61
Seat Belt Adjustment for Retractable Seat Belts ................. 62
Seat Belt - Inspect ............................................................ 167
Seat Belt - Replace .......................................................... 168
Service Interval Chart ......................................................... 124
279C and 299C Service Interval Chart .................................. 125
Service Intervals ............................................................ 125
Shipping the Machine ......................................................... 103
Loading the Machine ........................................................ 103
Unloading the Machine ....................................................... 104
Slope Operation ............................................................... 33
Sound Information and Vibration Information ....................... 34
"European Physical Agents Directive (Vibration) 2002/44/EC" .. 35
Sound Level Information ..................................................... 34
Sound Level Information for Machines in European Union Countries and in Countries that Adopt the "EU Directives" 35
Sources ........................................................................... 37
Specifications ................................................................. 48
Application/Configuration Restrictions .............................. 48
Diesel Fuel Requirements ................................................. 48
Intended Use ................................................................. 48
Machine Data ................................................................ 49
Sprocket - Inspect................................................ 168
Sprocket Inspection for 279C, 289C, and 299C............................................................... 168
Stopping the Engine .............................................. 99
Stopping the Engine if an Electrical Malfunction Occurs .............................................. 99
Inside Cab.......................................................... 99
Outside Cab..................................................... 100

Table of Contents..................................................... 3
Tilt Cylinder Bearings and Bucket Linkage Bearings - Lubricate............................................................ 169
Towing Information .............................................. 109
Track - Inspect/Adjust.......................................... 169
  Detension the track.......................................... 171
  Inspect............................................................. 170
Track Adjustment ............................................. 170
Track - Remove/Replace ..................................... 171
  Installing the Track........................................ 172
  Removing the Track........................................ 171
Track Roller and Idler - Inspect/Replace .......... 172
  Inspect............................................................. 172
Transportation Information ..................................... 103

Visibility Information............................................... 31

Welding on Machines and Engines with Electronic Controls .............................................................. 126
Window Washer Reservoir - Fill (If Equipped) ..... 172
Window Wiper - Inspect/Replace (If Equipped) ... 173
Windows - Clean ................................................. 173
  Polycarbonate Front Door and Polycarbonate Top Window ...................................................... 173
  Rear Window and Glass Front Door .......... 173
  Side Windows .................................................. 173
Work Tool - Lubricate........................................... 174
  Angle Blade...................................................... 175
  Dozer Blade..................................................... 176
  Grapple Rake.................................................. 175
  Industrial Grapple Bucket and Industrial Grapple Fork ............................................................ 174
  Multipurpose Bucket ...................................... 174
  Utility Grapple Bucket and Utility Grapple Fork .............................................................. 174
Work Tool Coupler Operation ................................ 87
  Attaching the Work Tool................................... 87
  Releasing the Auxiliary Hydraulic System Pressure .......................................................... 91
  Removing the Work Tool.................................... 90
Work Tool Mounting Bracket - Inspect.............. 176

Work Tool Operation.............................................. 96
  Complex Hydromechanical Work Tools .......... 98
  Simple Hydromechanical Work Tools ............ 97
  Work Tools ....................................................... 33
Product and Dealer Information

Note: For product identification plate locations, see the section “Product Identification Information” in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Delivery Date: ________________

Product Information

Model: _______________________________________________

Product Identification Number: ____________________________________________

Engine Serial Number: _________________________________________________

Transmission Serial Number: ___________________________________________

Generator Serial Number: ______________________________________________

Attachment Serial Numbers: _____________________________________________

Attachment Information: ______________________________________________

Customer Equipment Number: __________________________________________

Dealer Equipment Number: _____________________________________________

Dealer Information

Name: __________________________________________________________________ Branch: __________________________________________________________________

Address: __________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dealer Contact</th>
<th>Phone Number</th>
<th>Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sales:</td>
<td>____________</td>
<td>______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parts:</td>
<td>____________</td>
<td>______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service:</td>
<td>____________</td>
<td>______</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>